

華英繙譯金針

上 册

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

BOOK I

FROM CHINESE TO ENGLISH

華 英 繙 譯 金 針  
上 編

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

BOOK I

FROM CHINESE INTO ENGLISH

BY

LI UNG BING

ELEVENTH EDITION, REVISED

A handwritten signature in cursive script, likely reading 'M. M. Cheng', is written diagonally across the page. The signature is written in dark ink and is positioned over the publisher's information.

COMMERCIAL PRESS, LIMITED  
SHANGHAI  
1922

# 編輯大意

事即藉上書譯  
從編輯分也  
須編譯雖便  
必書英帙其  
也是由卷其  
已獲編然擇  
對實下之用  
便謂漢譯者  
取能後由習  
徒後編由者  
非而編由者  
語而編由者  
英互為編者  
習此兩編先  
肄彼為習無  
者必折國習  
學且旨我研  
今譯斯供而  
緋據以供下  
書摘譯  
是既有  
科有既  
一解然  
解之用  
有年之  
進不可  
準學用  
標四學  
程四學  
課足亦未  
校足亦未  
中學分  
訂日自  
新間則  
教育部編  
育兩全  
教有全  
上復有  
每編析  
中西教  
報章卷  
三理者  
神學依  
初學所  
況繙譯  
首生示  
文之法  
行相反覆其  
而兩文詞於  
同字全為可  
不文取代能  
字之先地不  
文國地全不  
國彼者處全  
兩與譯身無  
已字與後而  
而文善後文  
達之能然曲  
辭國不在與  
曰此斷所雖  
他以斷之雖  
無欲異用其  
道異差其義  
之尤無其補  
譯法毫得冗  
緋之核味蕪  
文參玩其精  
言譯學矣

是書爲學者示之途徑不宜過於深妙如上文之  
所言故凡有可以對譯者無不期其確合然有此國  
之字爲彼國所無者則不能不引伸其詞以達之且  
文字之從順與否將於我所爲譯者見之而與所自  
譯者相離故有時更不能不遺貌而取神是書摘譯  
全譯無不悉宗此旨未敢自信庶幾而已

公牘名目我國最繁平行者曰咨曰照會(今外交  
文牘均用照會)上行者曰呈下行者曰令曰布告英  
文中無此區別也英文有公牘私函之分無上行下  
行之別當於語意之輕重求之不能於形式之異同  
辨之書中間加註釋俾知甄擇

是書所採全首譯文有現成者(另於書內註明)未  
便竄易失其真相然竊有以爲未安之處則於摘譯  
中出以己意不欲苟同對證參觀於學者亦未始無  
益也

是書英漢兩譯祇爲初學略示津涯固不敢謂爲  
無二法門尢不敢謂爲悉中程式海內宏達教而正  
之幸甚幸甚

編者識

是書當民國二年六月再版時曾經原編者李質  
齋君就其不合於民國之材料略加刪易惟下編由  
漢譯英各課仍而未改者尙多茲由鄙人悉易以民  
國最新及重要文件其酌留而略爲修潤文字者九  
課倉卒屬稿恐未盡當倘蒙海內譯家及李君教正  
之則幸甚

甘作霖識

中華民國三年十一月



## PREFACE.

---

This series of two books is intended for the use of Chinese students pursuing English who desire to employ translation as a means of literary discipline. Book I. contains exercises to be translated into English; Book II, those to be translated into Chinese. Each book is divided into three parts of fifty lessons, Part I., simple and easy exercises, such as admit of literal translation; Part II., more advanced in thought and style; Part III., official correspondence and documents. These selections are progressive in character, interesting in subject-matter, and practical and elegant in style.

The plan and scope of these two books being identical there is no objection to a teacher or student using both books at the same time, taking one lesson out of each book alternately, or any one of them as he pleases.

The following are some of the special features of the books :—

1. Each Lesson is annotated and explained.
2. A few example translations are appended to each book.
3. Forms of documents are fully explained.

While the books are unique in character, the idea is not new. Translation has proved of great help to students in England and America when studying Ancient or Modern

Languages, and it promises to bring about the same result with our students of English. Inasmuch as there is more dissimilarity between Chinese and English than between English and French or any two of the European Languages, the student should be governed by the style of the language into which the translation is to be made, as well as by the original list. Literal translation should not be insisted upon when it means bad grammar or unnatural style.

Allowing two lessons each week, a student will be able to cover the two books in three years, under the schedule of the Board of Educations at Peking. But the annotations and example translations will, it is hoped, render them suitable for self-study too. It is solely for the benefit of those who are denied the privilege of studying with a teacher that these have been inserted. It is not claimed that they are models in any respect.

L.

Shanghai,  
February, 1911.

#### NOTE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

When this book went through its third edition in June, 1913, the author, Mr. Li Ung-bing, had revised it so as to adapt its contents to the use of a republican citizen. There are, however, many lessons in Part III remaining to be changed. For these I have substituted some of the important documents and literature that have appeared since the formation of the Republic. Owing to the haste with which this work is revised, unavoidable errors may arise. Any criticism, either from the author himself or from readers at large, will be heartily appreciated.

T. L. Kan.

November, 1914.

華英繙譯金針  
Translation Exercises

BOOK I

From Chinese to English

PART I

第一課 地球

袁生見地球儀怪之  
問於師曰吾人所居  
之地其形果如球乎  
師曰然袁生曰地形  
圓則居球下者何以  
不虞墜落師曰地心  
有吸力能吸地面之  
物故無墜落之患

袁生 A young man, by the name of Yuan. 地球儀 A terrestrial globe. 怪之 He wonders at it. 吾人所居之地 the earth on which we live. 果 really. 地形圓 If the earth is round; Take it for granted that the earth is round. 居球下者 those living on the lower side of the earth. 不虞 do not run the risk of. 墜落 to fall off; falling off. 地心 the centre of the earth. 吸力 attraction; gravity. 物 objects. 地面 on the surface of the earth. 患 danger.

## 第三課 續

袁生又問曰何  
謂吸力師取磁  
石一枚以鐵屑  
撒其上顛之倒  
之鐵屑終不墜  
落乃指而告之  
曰地球之吸物  
猶磁石之吸鐵  
也

何謂 What is. 磁石 Magnet. 一枚 One piece. 以鐵屑撒其上 to scatter iron dust over it. 顛之倒之 He turns it over now in one way and then the other. 吸 to hold by attraction. 乃指而告之曰 Pointing at this, he tells him, saying,..... 猶 as; in the same way that.

## 第三課

## 鷸蚌相爭

蚌方出曝鷸啄其肉  
蚌合而箝其喙鷸曰  
今日不雨明日不雨  
卽有死蚌蚌亦語鷸  
曰今日不出明日不  
出卽有死鷸兩者不  
肯相舍漁夫見而并  
擒之

蚌 Clam. 鷸 Snipe. 相爭 The struggle between. 方出曝 When coming out of its shell to sun itself. 啄 to peck up. 蚌合而箝其喙 the clam, on closing its shell, seized him by the bill. 今日不雨 "Let it rain not to-day." 兩者不肯相舍 Neither one would release the other. 而并擒之 and captured both of them.

## 第四課 麥

凡穀之類皆春生  
而秋熟惟麥不然  
其種也以季秋其  
穫也以仲夏性喜  
燥我國西北諸省  
產麥最多  
三四月之交南風  
拂拂麥苗方秀閒  
行隴畝間但見一  
碧無際蕩漾如波  
浪真足觀也

凡穀之類 All kinds of grains. 惟麥不然 but wheat is an exception. 種 to sow; to plant. 季秋 the ninth moon. 穫 to harvest. 仲夏 the 5th moon. 三四月之交 about the 3rd or 4th moon. 南風拂拂 With the coming of the gentle south wind 麥苗 the blades of wheat. 方秀 begin to look beautiful. 閒行隴畝間 to take a walk in the fields. 一碧無際 an endless expanse of a greenish blue. 如波浪 like waves. 真足觀也 a sight worth seeing, indeed; a grand sight, indeed.

## 第五課 酒

里中有娶婦者沈  
兒往賀及夕設筵  
享客主賓既坐酒  
數巡沈兒獨不舉  
杯主人屢勸之兒  
曰吾父常言酒能  
傷腦於兒童尤甚  
故不敢飲衆皆稱  
善

里中 In the village. 娶婦者 a wedding. 沈兒 Hsing, a boy. 往賀 called to offer his congratulations. 設筵享客 a feast was given for the entertainment of the guests. 酒數巡 the wine had gone round several times. 沈兒獨不舉杯 He, alone, refused to touch the glass. 勸 to ask one to drink. 吾父常言 my father has repeatedly told me that. 酒能傷腦 wine will affect the brain; wine is harmful to the brain. 於兒童 in the case of children. 尤甚 It is worse. 衆 All those present. 稱善 approved of what he said.

## 第六課

煙

潘兒戲吸煙喜甚  
 既而煙氣觸喉咳  
 嗽不已涕泗交流  
 母怪問之兒具以  
 告母曰煙有毒能  
 阻身體之發育非  
 童子所宜也兒其  
 戒之

戲吸煙 to play at smoking. 既而 In a little while. 觸喉 to force its way down the throat. 咳嗽不已 to cough incessantly. 涕泗交流 Both tears and snivel ran down the face. 具以告 to tell the whole truth. 煙有毒 tobacco contains poison. 阻 to hinder; to retard. 身體之發育 the development of a healthy body. 非 by no means. 所宜 good for. 戒 to abstain from.

## 第七課

繡花枕

董生性不嗜學日事  
 修飾見他人衣服有  
 勝己者輒歸求諸母  
 必得之而後已入學  
 數年業無所進同學  
 皆非笑之號爲繡花  
 枕喻其外觀雖美而  
 中實茅塞也

繡花 embroidered. 性不嗜學 is not fond of learning. 日事 to engage oneself day by day. 修飾 to dress elaborately. 輒 used to. 必得之而後已 would not be satisfied until he obtained what he wanted. 業無所進 no progress has been made in his studies. 非笑 to ridicule; to laugh at. 號爲繡花枕 They nicknamed him "Embroidered Pillow." 喻 The idea is. 而中 while its contents. 實 are composed of. 茅塞 grass.

## 第八課 鐵

父問兒曰金屬之中孰  
 爲貴孰爲賤兒曰金最  
 貴銀次之鐵爲下父曰  
 金銀雖貴僅用爲錢幣  
 及妝飾耳鐵價廉而用  
 廣家居之什物農工之  
 器具需鐵最多故無金  
 銀爲害猶小無鐵則百  
 業皆廢矣

金屬之中 Of all metal: 貴 the most valuable. 賤 the least valuable. 銀次之 silver comes next. 雖 while. 貴 highly prized. 僅用 its use is confined to. 錢幣 coins. 妝飾 ornaments. 鐵價廉而用廣 iron is less prized but its use is more varied. 家居 household. 什物 utensils. 器具 implements and tools 百業 all industries. 廢 to abandon; to bring to a standstill.

## 第九課 兵器

強國之道以兵爲  
 本用兵之道以器  
 爲先今日製造精  
 巧戰鬪用槍礮猛  
 烈無比陸有礮臺  
 海有戰艦攻守之  
 具日益堅利古之  
 城郭弓矢至今日  
 皆無用矣

兵器 Weapons. 強國之道 the strength of a nation. 用兵之道 the efficiency of an army. 今日製造精巧 with the advance that has been made in manufacture. 槍礮 guns. 猛烈無比 which in point of destructiveness have no equal. 礮臺 fortresses; forts. 戰艦 battle-ships; men-of-war. 攻守之具 offensive and defensive weapons. 堅利 effective. 城郭 walled cities. 弓矢 bows and arrows. 至今日皆無用矣 to be rendered out of date; to become things of the past; to lose all their usefulness.

## 第十課 螻

二螻同居小池天  
 久不雨池涸議他  
 徙路過一井其一  
 悅之將躍入其一  
 曰井水固佳苟有  
 他故不適吾意又  
 焉能出故但顧目  
 前而不圖其後者  
 取禍之道也

螻 frogs. 同居 to live together. 池涸 the pool is dried up.  
 議 he 徙 after due consideration, they have decided to remove some-  
 where else. 過 to pass by. 悅之 to be pleased with. 將 is about to;  
 is on the point of. 固佳 Undoubtedly good. 苟有 he 故 Should  
 something unusual ever happen; in case of an emergency. 顧 to  
 consider. 目前 the present. 而不圖 without regard for. 其後  
 the future. 取禍 to court misfortune.

## 第十一課 勤動

吳普問衛生之術於華  
 佗佗曰人體當使勞動  
 則食物易消血脈流通  
 病自不生戶樞不蠹流  
 水不腐以其常動故也  
 吾體偶有不適則爲禽  
 獸舞蹈之戲以祛疾普  
 從其言身體日健年至  
 九十餘

衛生之術 How to preserve one's health. 問於 to enquire of.  
 勞動 exercises. 則食物易消 to make digestion easy. 流通 to  
 circulate. 病 sickness; disease. 戶樞不蠹 the axis of a door never  
 becomes rotten. 流水不腐 the running stream never becomes un-  
 wholesome. 以其 it is entirely due. 不適 not well. 則爲禽獸舞  
 蹈之戲 I would dance about like birds or beasts. 祛 to get rid of.  
 從其言 to take his advices. 年至 to reach the age of.



## 第十二課 鴉

羣鳥議立君以美  
者任之鴉自知其  
醜乃往深林之中  
徧覓孔雀落羽聚  
飾其身以爲美莫  
己若也羣鳥知其  
詐爭啄去之傷其  
皮流血被體舊毛  
盡落

議 To call an assembly. 立君 to elect a King. 以美者任之 and the office was to be filled by the prettiest of them. 鴉 crow. 自知 being sensible of. 醜 ugliness. 往深林 to go into a forest. 徧覓 to look round for. 孔雀落羽 plumes that have fallen from the peacock. 詐 shrewdness. 以爲美莫己若也 thinking that no one is as pretty as himself. 爭 eagerly. 傷 to wound. 被 to cover with. 舊毛 his own feathers. 落 to come off.

## 第十三課 疫

鄉中大疫死亡相繼  
姚生問於師曰防疫  
有道乎師曰疫之生  
由於不潔今街衢污  
穢水流溷濁皆足致  
疫又有蚊蠅蚤蝨爲  
傳染之媒此疫之所  
以盛也故欲防疫必  
以清潔爲本

大疫 \ pestilence; an epidemic. 死亡相繼 persons died in rapid succession. 防疫 to stamp out an epidemic. 有道乎 is there any possible way? 疫之生由於不潔 an epidemic is the result of insanitation. 蚊 mosquitoes. 蠅 flies. 蚤 fleas. 蝨 bugs. 傳染之媒 agents of infection. 清潔 sanitary condition.

## 第十四課、紙

古時無紙書籍用竹簡或以  
 縑帛簡重帛貴得書甚難學  
 者苦之漢蔡倫始造紙至今  
 稱便  
 樹皮稻藁敝布之類皆可製  
 紙然常用者多以竹爲之福  
 建浙江等省產竹最盛故出  
 紙亦最多

古時 Ancient times 無 there was not; was not in  
 existence. 書籍 books and records. 竹簡 bamboo  
 slips. 縑帛 silks. 學者苦之 it was a great handicap  
 to students. 漢蔡倫 Chai Lung of the Han Dynasty.  
 始 for the first time. 樹皮 barks. 稻藁 grain stalks.  
 敝布 waste cloth. 之類 and the like. 然常用者 the  
 commonest kinds in use, however. 多以竹爲之 are,  
 for the most part, made from bamboo. 產 to produce.  
 故 for this reason; hence; therefore. 出 to supply.

## 第十五課 家書

汪生在學堂暇輒以書寓其友酬復爲戲一日得父書卽把筆作復既畢以錢二十買郵票一黏之封面投於路旁郵政箱明日父得書喜曰吾兒入學不及二年卽能作家書可喜也

母親大人膝下敬稟者昨由郵局寄到

手諭敬知

福體康強弟妹等亦安好甚爲喜慰男在學堂一切自知謹慎仰乞

大人勿勞聖念現在國文教科書第三册已經讀畢頗能領悟暑假在卽明日考試且看考後名列何等再行稟告謹覆敬

請

福安男○○謹稟 ○月○○日

暇 At leisure. 寓 to send to. 酬復爲戲 to amuse himself by keeping up his correspondence; his chief amusement was to keep up his correspondence. 卽把筆作復 He at once perceived an answer. 既畢 having done so. 郵票 a stamp. 黏 to paste on; to stick to. 投於 to throw into. 郵政箱 a letter box. 明日 the next day. 不及二年 less than two years. 卽能 and he is already able.

父母親大人膝下 Dear parents: 敬稟者 I would respectfully submit that. 由郵局 through the post. 勿勞聖念 please take no concern about me. 讀畢 have finished. 頗能領悟 and am able to understand the lessons therein contained. 暑假在卽 the summer vacation is on hand. 考試 examinations. 名列何等 as to how I stand in my class. 再行稟告 I shall report again.

敬請福安 with love. (此等語呆譯則儂因中西俗尙不同故也).

## 第十六課

## 樂正子春

齊伐魯索讒鼎魯  
以其質往齊人曰  
質也魯人曰真也  
齊人曰使樂正子  
春來言則吾將信  
之魯君請於樂正  
子春樂正子春曰  
胡不以其真往也  
君曰我愛之答曰  
臣亦愛臣之信乃  
辭不行

伐 To attack; to punish; to invade. 索 to demand; to make one give up. 讒鼎 the famous tripod of Yu (the tripod was made at Kan Chan hence its name). 魯以其質往 Lu sent an imitation. 真 genuine, 使樂正子春來言 let your Yok Chen Tze Chung come and declare its genuineness to us. 信 to believe; to take one's words for it. 我愛之 I am fond of it; I am unwilling to part with it. 乃辭不行 with this, he refused point-blank to make the trip as requested.

## 第十七課

## 貧富

姜彭二生同學姜  
生家貧冠履多敝  
彭生衣華服過而  
炫之姜生不顧且  
夕勤學每試輒高  
列卒業後爲講師  
家亦漸裕彭生廢  
學歷久無成賞盡  
而困歎曰乃今知  
富之不足恃矣

二生 Two young men. 同學 attended the same school; were school-mates. 冠履多敝 his hats and shoes were old and worn out. 衣華服 was clad in rich clothes. 過而炫之 and was very presumptuous whenever he met his friend. 不顧 to pay no attention to. 且夕 all his time. 每試 each examination. 輒高列 to stand high. 卒業 after his graduation. 講師 a lecturer. 裕 well-off. 廢學 having neglected his studies. 歷久無成 and was far from successful. 賞盡 his wealth at last was gone. 而困 and he began to feel the financial stress. 歎曰 with a sigh, he said. 乃今知 I now know. 恃 to rely upon.

## 第十八課

## 藤與桂

青藤盤於古屋之上  
 傍檐有老桂數株藤  
 俯視而笑之曰爾位  
 何卑桂曰我託身誠  
 不如君之高然吾盤  
 根土中卓立地上無  
 所依附汝憑古屋以  
 爲高屋傾汝其危哉

藤 The creeper. 桂 the cinnamon-tree. 古屋 an old house or building. 傍檐有老桂數株 several cinnamon-trees were only high enough to reach the eaves. 俯視 to look down upon. 爾位何卑 how low you are! 託身 to attach oneself. 然吾盤根土中 but we send our roots deep into the earth. 卓立 to stand erect. 無所依附 and are entirely independant. 憑 to lean on. 以爲高 to gain your height. 屋傾 the house may come down at any moment. 汝其危哉 your position therefore is a very perilous one.

## 第十九課 鵠

鵠出覓食遇隼輒  
 死鷹告之曰吾力  
 能制隼願爲爾衛  
 鵠大悅延鷹入其  
 居鷹既入撲殺羣  
 鵠無得免者世有  
 不圖自立而借助  
 於人猶鵠之求鷹  
 也

鵠 A pigeon. 出覓食 to go out in search of food. 隼 a hawk. 鷹 an eagle. 吾力能 I am strong enough. 制 to overcome. 願爲爾衛 and am willing to stand by you. 延 to invite. 其居 its abode. 撲殺 to strike to death. 無得免者 none of them escaped. 世有 there are persons. 不圖自立 who instead of helping themselves, 而借助於人 seek assistance from others.

## 第二十課

不識字

山有虎害人畜獵  
 人謀捕虎設阱以  
 伺之大書牆上曰  
 下有虎阱行人止  
 步鄉人不識字者  
 過牆下誤蹴之墜  
 阱傷足大呼求援  
 既出人指牆上書  
 告之乃歎曰吾苟  
 知書豈至此哉遂  
 發憤向學

不識字 illiterate. 山有虎 in a certain hill there are tigers. 害 which do a great havoc. 人畜 life and cattle. 獵人 huntsmen. 阱 a pit. 大書牆上曰 on the wall near-by there appear in bold characters as follows: 行人止步 "Don't go any further"; "beware of a pit." 鄉人 a country man. 誤蹴之 to overstep by mistake. 墜 to fall into. 大呼求援 he cried at the top of his voice for help. 指 to point out. 告之 to explain them to him. 吾苟知書豈至此哉 had I only been able to read, I would not have met with all this! 遂 henceforth. 發憤 he resolved.

## 第二十一課

禹治水

上古之時洪水爲  
 災民不得安宅帝  
 舜憂之命禹治水  
 禹在外十三年三  
 過家門曾不一入  
 苦心壹志手足胼  
 胝卒導水入江河  
 順流至海中國之  
 民始得安居樂業  
 禹之功偉矣

禹治水 Yu and the floods. 上古之時 the remotest time. 洪水 a flood. 爲災 which did so much havoc. 命 to command. 禹在外 Yu lived away from home. 三過家門 thrice he passed in front of his house. 苦心壹志 by faithful devotion and constancy of purpose. 手足胼胝 and with hands and feet becoming callous. 卒 at length. 導 to let out. 安居 to have homes. 樂業 to enjoy life. 禹之功偉矣 great were his services to mankind.

不	帆	不	掉	其	名	所	來	父	
順	帆	槳	水	後	爲	以	父	攜	第
故	受	而	使	有	槳	行	指	兒	二
用	風	行	舟	物	槳	乎	謂	至	十
槳	則	何	轉	如	拍	兩	兒	江	二
	舟	也	也	尾	水	旁	曰	畔	課
	進	父	兒	名	使	有	汝	有	舟
	來	曰	曰	爲	舟	物	知	舟	舟
	舟	彼	去	舵	進	如	舟	迎	
	風	有	舟	舵	也	翼	之	面	

父攜兒至江畔 A father took his son to the bank of a river. 迎面來 coming towards them. 汝知舟之所以行乎 do you know why the boat moves? 兩旁 on each side of the boat. 如翼 like the wings of a bird. 槳拍水 the oar cuts the water. 如尾 like the tail of a fish. 舵掉水 the helm swings in the water. 去舟 the boat that is sailing away from us. 帆受風 the sail is driven forward by the wind; the sail receive the force of the wind. 風不順 it is against the wind.

## 第二十三課 愛弟

余生性友愛每放假歸必與弟妹共遊玩一日還家適  
 其弟病臥牀不能起余生憂之常於牀前爲講故事唱  
 歌曲以悅其意明日入學又屢作書問之及病愈乃已  
 二弟手足昨回家值吾弟臥病不得同遊甚爲悵  
 悵今日病狀如何服藥後能稍瘥否不勝懸念明晚  
 課畢擬請假回家一視弟疾但學堂相距太遠未  
 知先生能否允許惟望吾弟格外謹慎俾得早  
 日痊愈也此訊

瘥安

兄○○手白

月

日

愛弟 Love your younger brother. 每放假歸 whenever he came  
 home from school on holidays. 臥床不能起 in bed. 講故事 to  
 tell a story. 又屢作書問之 he made many inquires after his  
 brother's health. 病愈 to recover from illness. 今日病狀如何  
 how are you getting on to-day. 服藥 to take medicine. 不勝懸念  
 my thoughts are with you always. 課畢 after school. 允許 to  
 consent. 格外 special. 請假 to ask for leave of absence.



## 第二十四課

## 勿謾語

司馬光幼時與其姊  
共弄胡桃欲脫其皮  
不得姊去婢以湯脫  
之光大喜持往告姊  
曰吾能脫之矣父呵  
曰小子何得謾語光  
自是改過終身無謾  
語

幼時 When a little boy. 弄 to play with. 胡桃 walnut  
欲去其皮 he wished to pull off its skin; to peel it. 以湯 by means  
of hot water. 呵 to blame. 小子何得謾語 don't you tell a lie!  
改過 repentant; to reform. 婢 a maid-servant; a slave girl.

## 第二十五課

## 纏足之害

人有四肢缺之則廢  
傷之則病病廢之人  
世之所憫也故有戕  
人之肢體者衆必斥  
之法必刑之惡其不  
仁耳  
父母愛子無所不至  
乃以纏足之虐施於  
女子使之終身病廢  
豈不愛其女哉亦蔽  
於世俗之見耳

害 The evil. 缺之 to deprive of. 廢 maimed. 病 invalid. 病廢  
之人世之所憫也 to an invalid goes our sympathy; an invalid is a  
subject of pity. 戕 to injure; to chop off. 斥 to condemn. 衆 the  
people at large. 法必刑之 the law will punish him. 父母愛  
子, 無所不至 a parent's love knows no bounds. 乃 still; however;  
but. 纏足之虐 the torture of foot-binding. 施 inflict. 豈不愛其  
女哉, 亦蔽於世俗之見耳 is it because they do not love their  
daughter? The fact is they have been blinded by a long-standing  
custom.

## 第二十六課 告假

邵生性謹愿入學有定  
 時積年餘未嘗遲片刻  
 居學中又甚勤奮先生  
 屢稱其賢一日諸生皆  
 上講堂獨邵生不至先  
 生曰邵生素不失期今  
 日不至必有故也語未  
 竟有持函來者啓視之  
 則邵生請假書也

謹愿 Regular. 入學有定時 he was always on time at school.  
 積年餘 for a year or more. 遲 late. 片刻 a moment. 勤奮 in-  
 dustrious. 屢稱其賢 of en speak highly of him. 講堂 class-room.  
 素不失期 he has never been late. 必有故也 something is wrong  
 with him. 語未竟 this was scarcely said. 請假書 a letter of excuse.

## 第二十七課

夫子大人尊鑒敬啓者  
 學生昨晚自學堂回  
 家途遇急雨衣盡  
 溼今日早起頭目暈  
 眩殊覺不適承家慈  
 之命在家少息俟病  
 稍愈當即赴學補課  
 用特修函請假伏祈

鑒察敬請

台安 學生○○謹上

○○月○○日

途遇急雨 I was caught in a shower. 衣服盡溼 was wet to the  
 skin. 頭目暈眩 to feel dizzy. 殊覺不適 I am not at all well 少息  
 to take a little rest. 補課 to make up my lessons. 伏祈鑒察  
 for your consideration; for your inspection; for your information.  
 謹上 respectfully submitted.

## 第二十八課

## 陳平分肉

里人殺牛羊祭  
於社祭畢分肉  
推陳平爲宰平  
年方少分肉甚  
均里人善之平  
曰使我得宰天  
下亦如是肉矣  
平後仕漢爲宰  
相十餘年國治  
民安天下稱賢

社 God of the Earth. 祭於 to offer sacrifice to. 祭畢分肉 the meat had to be divided after the sacrifice. 推 to elect. 宰 head steward. 方少 was a young man then. 使我得宰天下 if I should ever have an opportunity to preside over a state in the capacity of a prime minister. 亦如是肉矣 I would do to the nation what I have done with the meat. 宰相 prime minister. 國治民安 peace prevailed throughout the country and the people prospered. 天下稱賢 every one therefore sang his praise.

## 第二十九課

## 管仲師老馬

管仲從桓公伐孤  
竹春往冬返行山  
中迷失道管仲曰  
老馬之智可用也  
乃放老馬而隨之  
遂得故道夫以管  
仲之智或有所不  
知則師於老馬今  
人自恃其智而不  
求師不亦難乎

管仲師老馬 Kuang-Chung and an old horse. 從 to accompany. 迷失道 and lost their way. 老馬之智可用也 Let us be guided by the knowledge of the oldest horse. 乃放老馬 Thereupon an old horse was released. 夫以管仲之智 however wise Kuang-Chung was. 或有所不知 he could not know everything. 則師於老馬 so he permitted himself to be led by an old horse. 自恃其智 too confident of his own knowledge. 而不求師 unwilling to take advice.

## 第三十課 卜

卜者坐於四達之衢爲行人語休咎忽其子奔告曰吾家爲人所劫家具盡喪卜者倉皇失措有調之者曰君日爲人語休咎而家中凶兆顧不之省何也卜者不能對

卜者 A necromancer. 卜 necromancy. 四達之衢 a cross-road. 休咎 fortune. 行人 passers-by. 劫 to robbed. 家具盡喪 to be deprived of all furniture. 倉皇失措 this evidently embarrassed him to no small degree. 有調之者曰 One of the crowd jokingly said. 凶兆 a bad omen. 省 to notice. 何也 how are you going to explain this? 卜者不能對 the necromancer was unable to make any reply.

## 第三十一課

## 朋友

瞿蔣二生居同里學同師出入必偕相愛如兄弟久之蔣生隨父遊京師過別瞿生依依不舍瞿生曰男兒志在四方豈能株守一隅爾我交情音書可達非道路所能阻也

學同師 to study under the same teacher. 出入必偕 they have been brought up together. 久之 sometime after this. 蔣生隨父遊京師 Chien had to accompany his father on a trip to Peking. 過別瞿生 he called to take leave of his friend. 依依不舍 they looked as if they could not leave each other. 株守一隅 to be confined to one corner of the world. 爾我交情 so far as our friendship goes. 音書可達 it can be kept up by correspondence. 道路 distance.

## 第三十二課

○○仁兄足下別後不勝念  
 念想彼此同之也弟登舟後  
 計行三日始到大沽海中風  
 浪平靜却無暈船之苦次日  
 船入天津紫竹林登岸後乘  
 汽車約行三點餘鐘卽至都  
 下途中風景殊佳惜弟不文  
 未能詳述以告刻寓○○胡  
 同家嚴以下均幸安適聞  
 都中公立小學堂功課頗好  
 明年擬入彼肄業臨別曾約  
 彼此常通音問幸勿忘却學  
 中諸師友均乞道念肅請  
 文安 弟○○頓首

右蔣生與瞿生書

○月○○日

別後 Since I took leave of you. 不勝念念 I have often thought  
 of you. 海中風浪平靜 the sea was very calm. 暈船 sea-sick.  
 汽車 train. 途中風景殊佳 the scenery along the route is excep-  
 tionally beautiful. 惜弟不文 it is a pity that a poor scholar like  
 myself 胡同 street. 家嚴以下 my father and the rest of the party.  
 均乞道念 please remember me kindly to. 功課頗好 is doing good  
 work.

## 第三十三課

○○仁兄足下得○月  
 ○日手書知已安抵  
 都門甚爲欣慰  
 足下此行渡大海入京  
 師見聞之廣深足羨慕  
 恨不得追隨 左右以  
 增閱歷惟望將客中情  
 形詳以見告俾得聞所  
 未聞甚幸甚幸都中天  
 氣較上海爲冷祈 善  
 自珍衛敬問  
 旅安 弟○○拜上  
 ○月○○日  
 老伯大人尊前乞叱名請  
 安

右瞿生覆蔣生書

得○月○日手書 I have received your letter of —, —  
 足下此行 your trip. 羨慕 to envy. 恨不得追隨 左右以增閱歷  
 I wish I could have gone with you and enjoyed the sight also. 客中  
 情形 your travels. 甚幸甚幸 it will afford me a great pleasure.  
 老伯大人尊前乞叱名請安 Please give my compliments to your  
 father.

## 第三十四課

湖

地上之水始於溪澗  
 匯於大川而以海爲  
 歸宿川流所經過窪  
 下之地往往容納衆  
 水濬而爲湖大者廣  
 數百里泛舟其中四  
 顧茫茫猶浮海也  
 湖中饒魚鼈多菱藕  
 而溉田尤便故濱湖  
 之地產米特盛  
 湖之淺處築隄圍之  
 設閘以洩其水則成  
 湖田土壤膏腴收穫  
 尤豐

湖 a lake. 始於 takes its rise. 爲歸宿 as their final destination.  
 窪 swanthy. 往往 often. 容納 receives. 濬 to reservoir, to  
 collect and hold. 四顧茫茫 we can see nothing but an endless  
 expanse of water around us. 饒 to abound in. 鼈 turtles. 菱  
 water chestnuts. 藕 lotus roots. 溉田 irrigation. 故濱湖之地  
 therefore land bordering on a lake. 特盛 the most. 築隄圍之 if  
 we build an embankment around it. 設閘以洩其水 and let out  
 its water by a system of locks. 則成 it will then be turned into. 膏  
 腴 fertile. 收穫 crops.

## 第三十五課

祀蛇

南方卑溼氣候炎  
 蒸產毒蛇誤觸之  
 輒螫人愚民不殺  
 之以除人害且奉  
 爲宅神遇令節虔  
 祀之雖小兒無敢  
 喧嘩者夫蛇爲豸  
 屬動物之賤者也  
 人爲萬物之靈乃  
 對之稽首屈膝不  
 亦異乎至讀書之  
 人亦循陋俗而崇  
 拜之尤可笑已

祀 worship. 螫 to sting; to bite. 愚民不殺之以除人害且奉  
 爲宅神 the uneducated people, instead of killing them, and thereby  
 removing a source of danger to mankind, worship them as house-  
 hold gods. 喧嘩 noise. 豸屬 a reptile. 動物之賤者也 a low  
 form of animal life. 人爲萬物之靈 man is the devinist of all  
 things. 乃 and yet. 對之 before them. 稽首 to bow. 屈膝 to  
 kneel down. 異 extraordinary. 讀書之人 scholars and students.  
 陋俗 a debased custom. 尤可笑已 it is the more ridiculous.

## 第三十六課 清明

清明兄弟踏青於郊外路旁菜花盛開淺  
草平鋪一碧無際遊人三五成羣往來不  
絕弟曰三春多佳日踏青之舉何必待清  
明耶兄曰人人有職業不得荒曠故一逢  
佳節多相率出遊也

## 與友人約踏青書

○○仁兄大人足下久未聚譚渴念不  
置明日清明俗有踏青之舉僕擬挈舍  
弟至城外一遊

足下如得暇可以偕行明晨乞在  
尊府少候僕當便道相邀也並祈  
賜覆爲幸敬訊

起居

○○頓首

○月○○日

清明節 the Chinese Decoration Day. 踏青 to  
ramble on the lawn. 菜花 the rape. 淺草 new grass.  
三五成羣 groups of three or more. 往來不絕 a con-  
tinuous string of persons 佳日 bright days. 職業 work.  
荒曠 to leave; to desert. 渴念不置 I have longed to  
see you. 足下如得暇 if you have time. 便道 on our  
way. 賜復 to favour me with a reply.

## 第三十七課 墨

焚松桐之枝而取其灰  
 和以膠質範以模型曝  
 而乾之是之謂墨以墨  
 醮水而磨之於硯則爛  
 然成墨水可以濡筆而  
 寫字  
 寫字之時或以磨墨爲  
 苦則於暇時預磨而儲  
 之或蓄於壺或蓄於盒  
 盒中置篩則墨水吸入  
 雖移動其盒而無盪溢  
 之虞故爲用尤便

墨 Chinese ink. 松桐 pine or kindred woods. 灰 soot. 取 to collect. 和 to mix. 膠質 sticky substance. 範 to mould; to form anything into a particular shape. 模型 moulds. 醮水 to dip. 濡 to wet. 筆 a brush. 或以磨墨爲苦 to grind the ink is not always a pleasant work. 壺 a bottle. 盒 a box. 吸入 to soak. 而無盪溢之虞 without shaking the fluid out.

## 第三十八課

## 治家

我國習俗喜多積金  
 錢以貽子孫而不教  
 以職業故有年已長  
 成聚妻生子而尙依  
 賴其父母者不幸父  
 母歿家產盡無職業  
 以自養必有凍餒之  
 憂是愛之反以害之  
 也善治家者子弟必  
 使就學以習一藝學  
 成然後有室故父母  
 既沒雖無遺產亦得  
 以藝自給諺云積財  
 千萬不如薄技在身  
 誠哉斯言

治家 how to bring up your children. 積 to accumulate. 以貽 to hand down to; for the benefit of. 而不教以職業 instead of educating them for a particular trade. 故 as a consequence. 依賴 dependant upon. 不幸 unfortunately. 家產盡 and what is left by them should become no more. 以自養 whereby they can make a living. 凍餒 cold and hunger. 是愛之反以害之也 thus their parents', love for them has furnished the cause of their ruin. 善治家者 a good father. 有室 to take a wife. 遺產 legacy. 諺 proverb. 積財千萬不如薄技在身 it is better to learn one trade than to possess millions of money. 誠哉斯言 there is much truth in the saying.



第三十九課

帳簿

費生在學堂用財無度  
 得錢輒盡不給則貸於  
 人洪生謂之曰爾錢作  
 何用何所費之多也費  
 生曰吾不自知也洪生  
 曰財物之來不易不可  
 不知愛惜故出入之款  
 宜設帳簿以記之其不  
 當用者則撙節之費生  
 從其言日用漸省

對除外存錢	帳簿												
	入 款						出 款						
	廿九	廿七	廿四	二十	十九	十四	十三	初十	初六	〇月初一	月 日		
共計入錢					家中寄錢				家中寄錢	前月存款			
退					餅				麵	理髮			
共計用錢						石筆一枝			洗衣三件				
出	紙	理髮	紙	洗衣三件	理髮								
	一枝		一錠										

帳簿 Book-keeping. 用財無度 to spend money recklessly. 得錢輒盡 it does not take him long to spend all he receives. 貸於 to borrow from. 之來不易 it is not easy to obtain. 愛惜 economical. 出入之款 what we receive and expend; income and expenditure. 帳簿 account books. 撙節 to cut off. 日用 current expenses. 省 to reduce. 前月存款 balance from last month. 家中寄錢 cash from home. 理髮 barber. 洗衣 laundry.

## 第四十課

## 秦西巴

孟孫獵得麇使秦西  
巴載之歸母鹿隨之  
而啼秦西巴弗忍而  
與之孟孫至而求麇  
曰余弗忍而與其母  
孟孫大怒逐之居三  
月復召以爲其子傅  
其御曰曩將罪之今  
召以爲子傅何也孟  
孫曰夫不忍麇又且  
忍吾子乎

麇 a fawn. 載之歸 to carry it home in a carriage. 母鹿 its mother. 秦西巴弗忍 this was too much for Tsin Si Bu. 求 to ask for. 余弗忍而與其母 out of sympathy for its mother, I have given it to her. 逐 to dismiss. 居三月 three months after this. 召 to send for. 御 driver. 罪 to punish. 曩將罪之 you were going to punish him the other day. 夫不忍麇又且忍吾子乎 "Why, a man that could not forsake a fawn, will certainly not forsake my son."

## 第四十一課

## 海大魚

靖郭君爲齊相封於薛  
將城而居之客諫曰君  
不聞海大魚乎網不能  
止鉤不能牽不幸失水  
則螻蟻制焉君之在齊  
猶魚之在水也君苟善  
治齊齊強君又何憂焉  
若一旦齊亡雖築薛之  
城使高於天猶之無益  
也靖郭君曰善乃不城

封於薛 was appointed to Hsiek; was given the principality of Hsiek. 城 to build a wall around a city; to fortify it. 諫 to persuade one from doing something wrong; to remonstrate. 止 to stop. 牽 to lift up. 不幸失水 once upon dry land. 則螻蟻制焉 ants will be able to control its destiny. 君之在齊猶魚之在水也 Chi is to you what the water is to the fish. 使高於天 to make it as high as the sky. 猶之無益也 the result will be just as bad for you.

(客 one of his "guests." This piece is taken from the writings of the age of the Warring states. Nobles of that remote period all kept an army of the best scholars of the day, who, as a matter of courtesy, were styled "guests" instead of employees.)

## 第四十二課

## 南京

明太祖以平民起兵驅  
蒙古而有天下定都金  
陵名曰應天府其子成  
祖移蹕於北平未幾改  
爲順天府因號順天爲  
北京應天爲南京  
南京地勢自昔有龍蟠  
虎踞之稱城周七十六  
里有奇爲門十四而負  
山帶湖濱江控淮形勢  
雄壯甲於東南且有津  
浦鐵路北達天津滬寧  
鐵路東抵上海舟車往  
來水陸無阻故今日民  
國成立以是爲臨時國  
都焉

明太祖 Emperor Hung Wu of the Ming Dynasty. 平民 a private citizen. 蒙古 the Mongols. 成祖 Emperor Sung Lo. 移蹕 to transfer the seat of Government. 因 accordingly. 自昔 from times immemorial. 龍蟠虎踞之稱 well known for its strategical importance. 周 in circumference. 負山 protected by a mountain in its rear. 江 the Yangtze. 控 to command. 淮 the Huai River. 形勢雄壯 as a strong fortress. 甲於東南 it is second to none in all South-Eastern China. 津浦鐵路 the Pukow-Tientsin railway. 滬寧鐵路 the Shanghai-Nanking railway. 臨時國都 the capital of the Provisional Government.

## 第四十三課

## 溫泉

山谷之間有水湧出者  
謂之泉其暖者謂之溫  
泉溫泉四時常溫或有  
至沸者泉中所含物質  
不同其惡臭觸鼻者含  
硫黃質浴之能已癬疥  
之疾又有含鐵者其味  
澀含鹽者其味鹹體弱  
之人浴之尤宜我國四  
川境內溫泉頗多直隸  
廣東福建等省亦間有  
之

湧出 to bubble up. 泉 spring. 溫泉四時常溫 a hot spring is hot all the year round. 至沸者 to reach the boiling point. 含 to contain. 物質 substances. 其惡臭觸鼻者 that which has an offensive smell. 硫黃 sulphur. 已 to cure. 癬疥之疾 ring-worm, itch and other skin diseases. 澀 pungent. 鹹 salty. 浴之 to bathe in it.

## 第四十四課

## 愚公移山

北山愚公年九十面  
山而居惡其出入之  
不便也率其子孫荷  
擔執畚欲鋤而平之  
河曲智叟笑而止之  
曰甚矣汝之不智也  
以汝之殘年餘力曾  
不能毀山之一毛愚  
公曰不然雖我之死  
有子在焉子又生孫  
孫又生子子子孫孫  
無窮匱也而山不加  
增何懼其不能平

愚公 Mr. Stupid. 面山而居 to live behind a hill. 荷擔執畚 with baskets and hoes. 鋤 to dig into. 平 to level; to raze. 智叟 Mr. Wise. 甚矣汝之不智也 How foolish you are! 以汝之殘年餘力 with the few years you may live and the little strength you now command. 一毛 to the extent of a hair's breath. 毀 to damage. 不然 Oh! no. 無窮匱也 the work will be continued basket after basket. 而山不加高 and since the hill will not increase in height proportionately.

## 第四十五課

## 牧者

牧者暮收其羊見羣  
中雜山羊圈之明日  
大雪被野不能出乃  
儉飼已羊而豐其芻  
於山羊冀其馴服也  
雪融出牧山羊見山  
狂逸牧者追詈之曰  
爾何無情風雪食吾  
芻既飽而逸山羊顧  
語之曰爾薄己畜而  
厚我異日更得新羊  
則爾之薄我亦猶是  
耳

牧者 a shepherd. 收 to drive home. 羊羣 a flock. 雜 among. 圈之 This he kept in the fold. 儉飼 to reduce the food. 而豐其芻於 but gave plenty of grass to. 馴服 to tame. 山羊 a goat. 雪融 when snow melted. 狂逸 to run as fast as possible. 追 to pursue. 詈 to accuse. 爾何無情 How ungrateful you are! 薄 stingy. 厚 liberal. 亦猶是耳 as you have now done to your sheep.

## 第四十六課

## 假書

稽生嗜學不能致書恆  
假之於其友其假書也  
必預言還期既假必謹  
慎披閱勿使污損及期  
必整理而歸之或有未  
及閱竟者俟異日而更  
假焉若誤損其書則購  
新書以償之雖典質衣  
服節減日用不恤也以  
此假書於人無不應者  
故嵇生家徒四壁卒能  
博極羣書有名於時

嗜學 is fond of study. 致書 to obtain books. 還期 when to return books. 披閱 to turn the pages over. 污 to soil. 損 to damage. 整理 to put in order. 償 to replace; to make good. 典質衣服 to pawn one's clothes. 不恤也 He does not care. 無不應者 no one would refuse him. 家徒四壁 very poor; a family with nothing but four bare walls. 博極羣書 well read.

## 第四十七課

## 假書

○仁兄大人足下  
久別未晤想起居  
安適爲慰屢承惠  
假圖書感何可言他  
日若能稍增學識皆  
我兄之賜也茲送  
還算學書三册乞爲  
警收其第四第五  
兩册如一時不用可  
否再假一閱一星期  
內奉繳不誤瑣瑣費  
神殊增慚悻惟  
愛我者諒之

久別未晤 It is a long time since I saw you. 想 I trust. 他日 若 能 稍 增 學 問 whatever benefit I may derive therefrom. 其 第 四 第 五 兩 册 as to Book IV and Book V. 如 一 時 不 用 If you are not in need of them at present. 瑣 瑣 費 神 to have caused you so much inconvenience.

## 第四十八課 日月地

兄偕弟立於夕陽之下弟問兄曰日之入也向何處而去  
 兄曰地爲球形能自旋轉向日之方爲晝背日之方爲夜日  
 固未嘗行也

弟曰人居地上地動而人不覺何也

兄曰地大人小故不覺其動譬如乘巨舟者但見兩岸樹木  
 屋宇向後而去而不覺舟之前行也

弟曰請問地球旋轉之狀

兄曰地球之自轉也自左而右凡十二時而一周是爲一晝  
 夜又繞日而行凡三百六十餘日而一周是爲一年

弟曰地球既自轉矣何以又能繞日

兄曰爾不觀陀螺乎在地旋轉久之必離其位地球之且轉  
 且行亦猶是耳

日之入也 when the sun sets. 地爲球形 the earth is spherical  
 in shape. 旋轉 to rotate. 向日之方 the side toward the sun.  
 背 away from. 覺 to perceive. 譬如 For instance. 乘巨舟 to  
 go on board a ship. 向後而去 to move backward. 之狀 how. 十  
 二時 twenty-four hours. 繞日而行 to revolve around the sun. 地  
 球之且轉且行 the earth is revolving while rotating.

## 第四十九課 續

弟曰日與月等耳地球既繞日又將繞月乎兄曰日大於地凡百三十萬倍故地繞日地大於月凡四十八倍故月繞地若以地球之大小比豌豆則日大如西瓜而月小如芥子特日遠月近自地球望之大小幾相若耳

弟曰月之光何以薄於日

兄曰月本無光受日之光而返照於地故薄觀日光無盈虧月光有圓缺其故可知矣

弟曰月受日光則何以有圓缺

兄曰月亦如地向日之方則明背日之方則暗其在望也月之明處向地故見爲圓及自望而朔光以漸缺自朔而望光又漸滿則因其明暗之處互爲向地背地之差而已

地大於月凡四十八倍 the earth is 48 times the size of the moon or 48 times as large as the moon. 若以地球之大小比豌豆 If we say, for the sake of illustration, that the size of the earth is that of a pea. 西瓜 melon. 芥子 the seed of mustard. 返照 to reflect. 薄 weaker. 盈虧 the waning and increasing. 望 the 15th of the moon. 朔 the 1st of the moon. 互爲 alternately.

## 第五十課

## 寬待僮僕

陶淵明爲彭澤令不以家自隨乃遣一僕歸  
 以書遺其子曰汝旦夕之事自給爲難今遣  
 此僕助汝薪水之勞此亦人子也可善遇之  
 韓魏公以百金得玉杯大會賓客置杯几上  
 僕誤觸几玉杯墜地而碎坐客皆愕然僕伏  
 地待罪公神色不變笑語坐客曰凡物必有  
 破時特遲速異耳因語僕曰汝誤也非故也  
 卒不罪

令 a district magistrate. 不以家自隨 he did not take his family with him. 汝旦夕之事 your household work. 自給 to perform yourself. 助汝薪水之勞 to help you gather fuel and carry water. 此亦人子也 He is a beloved child of some father and mother. 公 Duke. 玉杯 a jade-stone goblet, 大會賓客 there was a great dinner party. 觸几 to go against the table. 皆愕然 all present were greatly excited. 僕伏地待罪 the slave prostrated himself on the ground, ready to receive what was his due. 神色不變 to be as natural as ever. 凡物必有破時 there is no article that will last for ever. 特遲速異耳 only a matter of time. 非故也 you did not mean to do it.



## PART II

### 第一課 中外歷法之異同

地球繞日一週爲三百六十五日有奇各國歷法略皆準此爲一年而又勻分其年爲十二月一年日數不能適盡地球繞日之時刻乃各置閏以消息之

中國舊歷大建之月三十日小建之月二十九日通一年計之不及地球週日之時刻凡十日有奇故閏二年有奇則舉其所積之二十九日以爲月而是年遂有十三月是爲閏月

西洋各國之歷每月或三十日或三十一日惟二月爲二十八日通一年計之不及地球繞日之時刻約三時閱四年則以其所積之十二時爲一日以增於二月爲二十九日是爲閏日

舊歷準月球繞地之一週以定期望者也故謂之陰歷西洋之歷則專準地球繞日之一週以爲年者也故謂之陽歷今歐美各邦皆用陽歷我中華民國元年亦改用陽歷矣

歷法 calendars. 準此 to base on. 一年日數 the number of days in a year. 不能適盡 do not exactly coincide with or correspond to. 地球繞日之時刻 the time occupied by the earth's revolution 置閏 by means of intercalation. 消息之 to make up. 大建之月 the large months. 通一年計之不及地球週日之時刻凡十日有奇 one year falls short of the time occupied by the earth's revolution by 10 days and a fraction. 則舉其所積之二十九日以爲月 we make one extra month out of the aggregate surplus of 29 days. 閏月 an intercalary month. 舊歷準月球繞地之一週以定期望者也故謂之陰歷 Our calendar is in fact regulated by the revolution of the moon around the earth, so that each new and full moon shall fall, respectively, on the 1st and 15th of the month; hence it is a lunar calendar. 陽歷 a solar calendar.

## 第二課 戒貪

某國之王性婪有女方五歲王愛之甚欲積財以遺之  
搜括於國中未嘗饜足

一夕夢一老人謂之曰汝欲得財乎吾有術能點金王  
喜甚請觀其術

老人以手觸几几化爲黃金觸席席亦金乃謂王曰以  
此畀汝汝其足乎

王曰未也老人怪問故王曰吾願得其術耳老人許之  
乃授以觸手成金之術

王試之器具門戶垣牖階石無不成金大喜欲狂  
亟召其女示之女愀然曰兒腹方飢黃金不可食奈何

王取餅授女而餅化爲金女以齒齧之金堅觸齒痛極  
而哭王抱女撫慰之轉瞬間女亦化爲金人不哭亦不  
言王大驚狂號而醒自是貪念稍殺

貪 avarice. 婪 avaricious. 搜括 to extort. 點金 to convert things into gold by the touch. 術 act. 化爲 to transform; to turn into. 席 seat. 老人許之乃授以觸手成金之術 the old man consented and taught him the method how to turn any thing into gold by the touch of the hand. 亟召其女示之 with all haste he sent for his daughter for he wanted to show her what he could do. 愀然 grievously. 奈何 what shall I do? 轉瞬間 all on a sudden. 不哭亦不言 and could neither cry nor talk. 稍殺 less.

## 第三課 國旗

國旗者主權之所寄所以代表其國者也故凡  
 新得一地必樹國旗於其上其在外國之兵艦  
 及公使館領事館皆本國主權之所在故無有  
 不懸國旗者國旗而榮即國家之榮也國旗而  
 辱即國家之辱也是以一國之人當尊敬本國  
 之國旗亦不得施無禮於他國之國旗  
 國有慶事則他國代表之在其國者必升旗以  
 祝之國有凶事則下旗以弔之而兵船學校中  
 遇有慶祝之事於本國國旗之外且徧懸各國  
 國旗所以示交際之禮而聯彼此之情也

國旗 the national flag. 主權之所寄 is the emblem to sovereignty. 代表 to stand for. 公使館 Legations. 領事館 consulates 其在外國之兵艦及公使館領事館皆本國主權之所在故無有不懸國旗者 their men-of-war in foreign waters, and their Legations and Consulates in foreign countries, carry sovereignty with them, hence they all display their National ensign. 國旗而榮即國家之榮也 to honour the national flag is to honour the nation. 一國之人 any national. 則他國代表之在其國者 any representative of a foreign government stationed in the country in question. 必 shall. 下旗 to half-mast a flag. 祝 to congratulate. 弔 to condole. 所以示交際之禮而聯彼此之情也 this is required by international courtesy as an expression of the friendly feelings one nation has for another.

## 第四課 黃河

中國第一大川曰長江黃河次之

黃河發源於青海經流我國北境東注於海其流渾濁且水勢洶湧不利舟楫故交通之利遜於長江黃河上流多行山嶽間有高屋建瓴之勢其流迅急及一出龍門千里平原任其奔放水勢泛濫無力挾泥沙入海歲歲淤墊河身漸高兩岸隄堰亦歲歲增築故沿河平地反低於河身及春秋水漲時下游不及宣洩往往潰隄四出兩岸平地皆成澤國壞田廬漂人畜所在皆是可哀已黃河爲患自古已然故常設專官以董之然主其事者既不爲根本之計又不先事預防及至潰決始補苴罅漏以圖目前之安甚或因以爲利此河患所以至今不息歟

長江 the Yangtze. 黃河 the Yellow River. 次之 the second largest. 發源 to take its rise. 青海 Kokonor. 經流 to flow through. 注 to empty into. 其流渾濁 Its water is muddy. 且水勢洶湧 and its current turbulent. 不利舟楫 it is unnavigable. 故交通之利遜於長江 therefore in point of usefulness, it is also second to the Yangtze. 有高屋建瓴之勢 and abounds in rapids. 其流迅急 the current is very swift. 無力挾泥沙入海 it fails to carry the mud and sand with it into the sea. 歲歲淤墊 every year more sediment is left behind. 河身 the bed of the river. 隄堰 the embankments. 宣洩 to let out. 壞田廬漂人畜所在皆是 damaging farms and houses, and carrying away people and cattle wherever it goes. 黃河爲患自古已然 the Yellow River has been a curse to China, from time immemorial. 以董之 to prevent the inundations. 然主其事者 the responsible authorities, however. 既不能爲根本之計 not only fail to root out the evil. 又不先事預防 but also to take timely precautions. 甚或因以爲利 worse still, some of them even welcome a disastrous event as means to gain their personal end. 此河患所以至今不息歟 this is why the River evil is not abated to the present day.

## 第五課 中國治理藩屬之制

滿洲爲清朝舊部分爲三省曰奉天曰吉林曰黑龍江舊以將軍主其事末葉分置巡撫而統以東三省總督焉民國成立改爲都督內外蒙古爲藩屬之地我國因其酋長授之爵位以鎮撫其民  
 西藏俗奉佛教其官長以喇嘛任之而特派駐藏大臣以掌內治外交之事  
 青海治制略如蒙古其辦事大臣則居甘肅之西甯府以遙領之  
 新疆本爲藩屬今改設行省官制悉如本部  
 甘肅四川廣西雲南貴州諸省有苗獠之屬盤踞山谷則仍其酋長世襲土司或授以府廳州縣之職故其地雖在本部而官制殆等於藩屬

滿洲 Manchuria. 舊部 the home. 舊以將軍主其事 formerly its government was placed in the hands of a Tartar-General. 巡撫 provincial governors. 總督 viceroy. 統 subject to the supervision. 都督 Military Governor. 藩屬之地 vassals. 酋長 chieftains. 以鎮撫其民 to govern their people. 西藏俗奉佛教 Thibet is a land of Buddhism. 喇嘛 Lamas. 駐藏大臣 the Resident-General in Thibet. 以掌內治外交之事 to manage its domestic and foreign affairs. 苗獠之屬 the Miaotze and other aborigines. 盤踞山谷 they make their strongholds in mountains. 世襲土司 hereditary lords. 或授以府廳州縣之職 some of them are given ranks of Prefects, Sub-prefects, department-magistrates, or district-magistrates. 故其地雖在本部而官制殆等於藩屬 Thus, while their land is counted as part of China Proper, their government bears close resemblance to that of a vassal state.

## 第六課 政體

國家之事謂之政政有三權曰立法預定一切辦事之章程者也曰行政因預定之章程而施行之者也曰司法監督一切辦事人之行爲及人與人之交涉而糾正其不法者也因三權之分合而政體以異

專制政體凡立法行政司法三權皆掌於君主一人或君主及貴族數人而其他人民皆不得與聞也

立憲政體有制定之憲法爲上下所共守行政之權屬於君主其立法議院主之其司法則特立一部凡行政立法之人皆受其監督焉  
共和政體其三權之分立與立憲同特君主不世及而由人民公舉總統以爲行政之長

政體 Forms of governments. 政有三權 There are three governing powers. 立法 the legislative. 行政 the executive. 司法 the judicial. 預定一切辦事之章程者也 to pass all laws for the conduct of state affairs. 因預定之章程而施行之者也 to put into effect all the laws that have been passed as stated. 監督一切辦事人之行爲及人與人之交涉而糾正其不法者 to watch the conduct of persons entrusted with the administration, and the intercourse between individuals and to set right anything that is illegal. 分合 the union or division. 專制政體 an absolute government. 皆掌於 are in the hands of. 貴族 nobles. 立憲政體 a constitutional government. 憲法 constitution. 議院 parliament. 則特立一部 forms an independent institution. 共和政體 a republic. 世及 hereditary. 總統 President. 以爲行政之長 to be the Chief Executive.

## 第七課 戶口

古者司徒之職掌登萬民之數書之於版歲登降其生死及三年而獻諸王王拜受之古人之視民數蓋若斯其重也

漢時始課丁稅凡民自十五以至六十歲必納稅是爲口錢魏晉以降皆緣其制前清編審法每歲一舉以稽人民之數自康熙五十二年併丁稅於田賦以後滋生人丁永不加賦以寬無業之民於是戶口之登耗無與國帑之盈虧官吏視若具文稽查之事有名無實而戶口遂不得正確之數矣近世文明各國稽核戶口尤爲謹密國中人不無貴賤無貧富其生死婚嫁必以時白諸吏苟有玩匿遲延若所告不以實者則懲罰隨其後夫豈故爲苛小以擾民哉不若是則國不可得而理也

司徒 The Minister of Interior. 掌登萬民之數書之於版 was to record the census on a bamboo slip. 歲登降其生死 to add the births and subtract the deaths in each year. 及三年而獻諸王 and to present the result to the King at the end of every third year. 古人之視民數蓋若斯其重也 this shows the importance the ancients always attached to the question of census. 漢時 the Han Dynasty. 始課丁稅 for the first time levied a poll tax. 必納稅 had to be taxed. 皆緣其制 were more or less based upon this system. 前清編審法 the census law in force under the Ching Dynasty. 每歲一舉 required census to be taken once a year. 併丁稅於田賦 the poll-tax was incorporated into the land tax. 以寬 so as to exempt. 戶口之登耗 the increase or decrease in population. 無與 had nothing to do with. 視若具文 to regard the law as a dead letter. 稽查之事有名無實 the taking of census became a mere farce. 遂不得正確之數 no reliable data in this respect are now obtainable. 尤爲謹密 very minutely and carefully. 則懲罰隨其後 punishments will be immediately meted out. 夫豈故爲苛小以擾民哉 why do they burden the people with such trifling details?

## 第八課 通商條約

國與國並列而有交涉國與國交涉而有條約條約者以聯彼此之情誼而互保其利益者也昔我國號稱一統鄙外人爲夷狄若不屑與交涉然自前清道光二十二年爲英所敗始締通商條約各國援例以請次第訂約迄今六十餘年列約章者十有七國光緒元年始於各國都城置公使館掌外交之事商民所居留之埠置領事館使掌貿易之事而諸國亦皆遣公使領事於我國焉

我國閉關自治不通外情外人之初來也固拒而不納彼以兵力挾我不得已而後與通故所訂之約恆不利於我我民又輕侮外人違約蔑禮之事往往而有外人又以兵力挾我積威所劫遂惟其言之是聽而我國我民乃大受其害矣

通商條約 Commercial Treaties. 聯 to unite. 情誼 the ties of friendship. 互保 to mutually safeguard. 號稱一統 presuming to be a world Empire. 鄙外人爲夷狄 to look down upon all aliens as "Barbarians." 若不屑與交涉 as if unworthy to have anything to do with them. 例 precedent. 次第 one after the other. 迄今六十餘年 during the past sixty years. 掌外交之事 to maintain our foreign relations. 掌貿易之事 to deal with commercial questions. 我國閉關自治不通外情 our government having maintained a civilization independent of other nations had at first little or no knowledge of the world. 固拒 to exclude. 彼以兵力挾我不得已而後與通 it was only at the point of the bayonet that China was thrown open. 恆不利於我 not to our best advantage. 外人又以兵力挾我 the foreigners again resorted to arms. 積威所劫 after repeated defeats. 惟其言之是聽 we were obliged to accept what terms were dictated to us. 而我國我民乃大受其害 to the disadvantage of both government and nation.



## 第九課 續

歐美各國之互訂條約也其利益必相等凡僑寓商民之待遇貨物入口之稅則其寬嚴輕重彼此同之今我國商埠凡四十處皆爲外人經商之地傳教之徒且徧於全國然外人之不法者恆歸其領事裁判我不得而懲之而我人之游於外國則必服其國之法律外國貨物之入我國百徵其五我國貨物之往外國則稅則隨其所欲我不得過問也凡此數者猶載在約章爲立約之政府之所許也至若外人之雇傭入教之民人以及商號之託名外籍者且亦藉其護庇犯法干紀無所不至而我人之旅居外國者或特設苛例以困之甚者禁絕其往來則出於條約之外矣

其利益必相等 equal rights or privileges. 凡僑寓商民之待遇貨物入口之稅則 in matters of immigration, residences, or tariff. 其寬嚴輕重彼此同之 reciprocity is their policy. 外人之不法者 Foreign offenders. 恆歸其領事裁判 are amenable only to the jurisdiction of their own consuls. 而我國人之游於外國者 but Chinese residing abroad. 則必服其國之法律 are subject to the local courts. 外國貨物之入我國 Foreign goods entering China. 百徵其五 pay a 5% ad valorem duty. 我國貨物之往外國者 Chinese imports to a foreign country. 則稅則隨其所欲 are taxed under tariffs adopted at its own pleasure. 我不得過問也 without reference to China. 凡此數者, 猶載在約章 these cases, however, are all subjects of treaty stipulations. 外人之雇傭 Chinese persons in foreign employ. 入教之民 native Christian converts. 商號之託名外籍者 Chinese business registered under the name of a foreigner. 護庇 protection. 犯法干紀 to commit offences against the Chinese law. 則出於條約之外矣 all these acts are not sanctioned by treaties.

## 第十課 續

通商以來我之受害者既如是甚矣然欲仍守閉關之策不特勢所不能抑亦理所不可夫一地之生產不能無所贏絀惟萬國互市以羨補不足而後各得其平不獨貨物然也即無形之智識亦必藉交通以增長之乃能日進於文明是通商者誠兩利之事也

且我國之所以受害者亦不能專責之外人也裁判之官徵稅之吏既多虐政爲外人所藉口而國民教育未普僑寓他邦者又有所以取侮之由然則非改良政治增進民德而護以海陸軍之實力必不能與各國抗衡矣

通商以來我之受害者既如是甚矣 so much for the disadvantage that has accrued to us since the opening of China to commerce. 欲仍守 to return to. 之策 the policy of. 閉關 seclusion. 不特 is not only. 勢所不能 an impossibility. 亦 but also. 理所不可 an absurdity. 不獨貨物然也 this is not only true of commodities. 交通 intercommunication. 通商者誠兩利之事也 international commerce is therefore a twofold benefit. 裁判之官 judges. 徵稅之吏 customs officers. 虐政 unjust and discriminate acts. 藉口 a good cause for complaint. 未普 is far from general. 侮 indignities. 非改良政治 unless we reform our government institutions. 民德 moral standard of the nation. 增進 to increase. 實力 efficiency. 必不能與各國抗衡 it will be utterly impossible for us to maintain our proper position in the family of nations.

## 第十一課 相僮

有人以厚資募傭工於是薦者凡五十餘人  
 主人選一僮而謝去其餘其友曰此僮未持  
 薦書君何信之深也主者曰是僮薦書固甚  
 夥  
 吾見其入門也先擦其履隨自扇其戶此以  
 修潔慎密者薦我也  
 入時見整叟乃肅立讓坐此以恭敬有禮者  
 薦我矣  
 答語敏捷而善辭此以嫻於應對者薦我矣  
 余故遺書在地餘人所過無不蹴踏彼獨拾  
 置案頭此以小心惜物者薦我矣  
 其入坐也必以次不欲先人此以謙讓自持  
 者薦我矣  
 我與之談觀其衫履甚整潔觀其齒牙則瑩  
 白如乳秉筆書名指甲無一陳垢真良僮也  
 凡吾所述薦書能如是詳耶我留意細察方  
 得此人較諸爭攜薦書者不尤可信乎

以厚資募傭工 to employ an office boy at a good salary. 選 to  
 choose. 謝 to dismiss. 其餘 the rest. 薦書 recommendation. 是  
 僮薦書固甚夥 he has recommendation enough. 擦 to rub. 扇 to  
 close. 隨 behind him. 此以修潔慎密者薦我也 he is thus recom-  
 mended to me for his cleanliness and carefulness. 整叟 a lame old  
 man. 敏捷 promptly. 嫻於應對 skill in answering questions. 余  
 故遺書在地 I left on purpose a book on the floor. 蹴踏 to walk  
 over 小心惜物 attentiveness. 其入坐也必以次 he waited his  
 turn to take a seat. 謙讓 modesty. 我與之談 when I talked to  
 him. 整潔 neat and orderly. 瑩白如乳 as white as the milk. 秉  
 筆書名 when he took the pen to write his name 指甲無一陳垢 I  
 did not see any dirt in his finger nails. 真良僮也 he is an ideal boy  
 indeed. 我留意細察方得此人 I have come to know this young  
 man by close observation. 較之爭攜薦書者不尤可信乎 Is he  
 not more trustworthy than those who have presented written  
 recommendations ?

## 第十二課 種茶

茶小樹也高四五尺葉形橢圓四周有齒惟近莖處無之

山坡瘠土之不宜穀者種茶無不茂盛以坡斜水洩樹根不至霉腐也

植三年可以採擷更後二三年其味逾美至六七年味復漸劣藝茶者乃鏟去之易以新種

每年采茶可三度常在二月五月七月之間葉最嫩者香味均佳價亦最昂故春時所采品最貴入

夏則葉老而味薄

茶有紅綠二種綠茶以新採之葉製之若曝露其

葉使之發酵而後焙之則成紅茶

小樹 shrub. 橢圓 elliptical. 四周有齒 they are serrated. 惟近莖處無之 excepting the part near the leaf-stalk 山坡瘠土之不宜穀者種茶無不茂盛 unfertile soil on hill slopes unfavorable to the growth of grains is always suitable for the cultivation. 以坡斜水洩樹根不至霉腐也 the reason is that water percolates better on a slope, and does not tend to rot the roots. 採擷 to pick. 鏟去之 to dig them up. 易以新種 to grow new plants in place of the old. 三度 three crops. 葉最嫩者香味均佳價亦最昂 the more tender the leaf bud, the better their flavor and the higher their prices. 綠茶以新採之葉製之 green teas are made from young leaves by giving them no time for fermentation after they have been gathered. 若曝露其葉使之發酵而後焙之 if you air them, allowing them to ferment, and then roast them.

## 第十三課 陶器

陶器爲我國名產唐宋以後累代俱著盛名江西饒州之景德鎮爲陶業極盛處販運四方無足與比倫者今則所產者多半粗劣偶有佳品而價又甚高故人乃漸用外國品謂之洋瓷而利多外溢矣

凡作陶器先碎陶土雜以白沙乃和以水埴之以爲型土與沙不相膠也遇火易裂乃加長石之屑以黏之如是而後燒之則成坯坯粗而不澤不可以爲觀美且遇雜色則染之遇液體則滲之亦不適於用也於是乎施之以釉釉之與坯亦恃長石之屑以相結而後乃光澤如玻璃其彩繪者則先以彩色繪山水花鳥之屬而後以釉敷之

陶器 porcelain; chinaware. 爲陶業極盛處 is the porcelain centre. 無足比倫 unequalled. 多半粗劣 mostly of the coarse or poor grade. 外國品 articles of foreign make. 而利多外溢矣 thus much of our wealth has found its way abroad. 白沙 silica. 裂 crack. 以黏之 to make them cohesive. 燒 to bake. 坯 soft porcelain. 不澤 not glazed. 液體 fluid. 滲 to soak through. 埴之 to make it plastic. 釉 glaze. 而後乃光澤如玻璃 thus it becomes glassy. 其彩繪者 as regards colouring. 則先以彩色繪山水花鳥 the process is to have the painting, which may either be landscape or figure painting, done in colours before the glaze coating is put on.

## 第十四課 製絲

我國四千年前已知製絲之法漢時流傳外國外人珍之

我國本部全土無不宜蠶而江浙爲最廣東次之江浙飼蠶皆以桑葉故產絲尤良山東或用櫟葉湖北間用櫟葉則其絲較遜

自與外國通商絲帛出口歲值銀恆數千萬近來飼育不善蠶病日多而法意等國亦重蠶桑之利飼法日精日本蠶桑業本取則於我國近始採用西法不數年間產絲幾與吾國匹

我國售絲於外人而購外國所織之綢緞是輸出生貨而輸入熟貨也今外人又競設絲廠於我國購繭而自繅之利源之外溢者益甚我國人其速改飼育之法設繅絲之廠兼仿外國紡織之法無以工業之利讓人則善矣

我國四千年前已知製絲之法 the manufacture of silk was known in China more than 4,000 years ago. 漢時流傳外國 during the Han Dynasty silk found its way into foreign countries. 外人珍之 foreigners valued it highly. 我國本部 the whole of China Proper. 無不宜蠶 is admirably adapted to sericulture. 桑 mulberry trees. 櫟 chestnut tree. 自與各國通商絲帛出口 歲值銀恆數千萬 since China was opened to commerce, millions of dollars worth of silk has been annually exported. 法意 the French and Italians. 亦重 likewise pay closed attention to. 蠶桑之利 silk industry 飼法日精 they take scientific care of the silk-worm. 日本蠶桑業本取則於我國 Japan first learned the art of manufacturing silk from us. 不數年間產絲幾與我國匹 within the space of a few years, she almost rivals China in the production of silk. 絲 silk fibres. 是輸出生貨 thus we export the raw material. 而輸入熟貨也 and import the finished product in turn. 繭 cocoons. 繅 to reel. 無以工業之利讓人 keep our own field in respect to this industry. 則善矣 we will be doing well.

## 第十五課 氣球

夕陽西下暮色蒼然兄弟二人散步庭前見  
 歸鴉成陣鳴聲啾啾不絕於耳  
 弟曰吾輩局處堂宇所見甚隘安得如鳥之  
 騰身空際一擴其眼界乎  
 兄曰鳥有翼故善飛人則安能無已其乘氣  
 球乎  
 弟曰氣球何如  
 兄曰以帛爲球中實煤氣球下繫筐人居其  
 中則氣球挈之上升高入雲表  
 弟曰氣球何以上升  
 兄曰凡物重則沈輕則浮自然之理也大地  
 之外空氣包裹故人畜萬物之重於空氣者  
 皆附著地上煤氣之質輕於空氣貯之球中  
 乃能上升而不墜  
 且爾不觀夫水乎投之以鐵則沈投之以木  
 則浮氣球之升於空中猶木之浮於水上也

夕陽西下 in the West the sun gradually goes down. 暮色蒼然 and the sunset sky is so beautiful. 歸鴉成陣 flocks of crows coming home. 吾輩局處堂宇 since we are confined indoors. 所見甚隘 we are not able to see very far from us. 安得如 I wish I could. 騰身空際 to fly in the air; to ascend the air. 一擴其眼界乎 to see something of the universe. 善飛 can fly swiftly. 無已其乘氣球乎 the only way to do so, will be to go up in a balloon. 下繫筐人居其中 to the ball is fastened a basket in which we sit. 則氣球挈之上升高入雲表 the balloon will lift us up beyond the clouds. 大地之外空氣包裹 our globe is enveloped by air. 煤氣之質輕於空氣 gas is lighter than the air. 貯之球中 with gas compressed in the balloon. 投之以鐵則沈 throw into it a piece of iron and down it sinks.

## 第十六課 英吉利

英吉利歐洲西北之島國也本邦疆域僅百餘萬方里與我國直隸省等耳而屬地徧五洲大於本土者凡九十餘倍固今日地球第一大國也

英國居海中交通便利其民性堅忍喜冒險故海軍之強盛商業之發達亦爲各國冠國中多製造廠所成器物精巧堅固行銷於全球其輸入我國者亦較他國爲盛

當法國革命之時影響所及無國蔑有獨英以立憲最早故君主尊榮百姓樂業卒無纖芥之禍

倫敦爲英國都城居民四百餘萬人煙之稠密爲世界各都會最鐵路密如蛛網尙不足以容行人於是上駕飛橋下掘隧道以通汽車其繁盛可想矣

歐洲 Europe. 島國 a country made up of a group of islands. 本邦疆域 her own area. 屬地 colonies. 五洲 all the Continents. 交通便利 within easy communication with the outside world. 喜冒險 bold and enterprising. 故海軍之強盛 therefore in point of naval strength. 商業之發達 and commercial development. 亦爲各國冠 she easily leads the world. 當法國革命之時 during the period of the French Revolution. 獨英以立憲最早 England being the first country to adopt the constitutional form of government. 卒無纖芥之禍 without the slightest trouble in this respect. 人烟之稠密爲世界各都會最 it is the largest city in point of population. 鐵路密如蛛網 the city is spanned over by a network of railroads. 尙不足以容行人 these are nevertheless insufficient for the traffic. 飛橋 suspension bridges. 隧道 tunnels. 以通汽車 for the passage of trains. 其繁盛可想矣 we may thus form an idea of its greatness.



## 第十七課 法律

凡衆人集合之團體必預定規則彼此共守之然後可以保治安而增利益故學校有學校之規則營業有營業之規則至於國家其益衆其關係益大其規則自必益詳所謂國家之規則者法律是已

國家而無法律則弱肉強食人人之生命身體財產名譽皆將不可保苟被侵犯無所控告互相報復紛紛擾擾將無所底故必設爲法律以保護人民之權利使無或侵犯則國家全體自大受其益矣

法律之種類既多條目又繁不能備知其詳然各就其相關之法律深察而謹記之使不稍越範圍而無陷於罪戾此亦國民之所不可忽者

凡衆人集合之團體 in an organized community. 規則 rules. 彼此共守之 which shall be above all concerned. 然後 before. 保治安 to maintain peace and order. 而增利益 or to promote its general interest. 營業 business houses. 至於國家 as to a country. 其關係益大 it has far-greater consequence. 益詳 more minute. 國家而無法律 In a country without law. 則弱肉強食 the weak will stand an easy prey to the strong. 人之生命身體 person. 財產 property. 名譽 reputation. 苟被侵犯無所控告 there will be no legal redress for any wrong committed. 互相報復紛紛擾擾將無所底 with every one bent upon revenge, there will be no end to disorder or confusion. 權利 rights. 國家全體 the nation as a whole. 條目 branches. 其相關之法律 such laws as would affect us the most. 範圍 restrictions. 無陷於罪戾 to commit no sins or offences. 此亦國民之所不可忽者 this is a matter that no citizen can afford to neglect.

## 第十八課 外交失敗

我國自古閉關自守環顧四鄰小邦其文化皆不我及故自號曰中國初未知地球之大小也自前清道光以來與各國立約通商外人相繼而至我國不審外情不圖自強而外交失敗遂屢見不已也

漢唐之時我國曾與歐洲交通及元世祖侵掠歐洲歐亞之往來始頻然遵陸而行道途險遠及明季葡萄牙初由海道至澳門荷蘭繼之遂踞臺灣英法等國亦接踵而至及汽船既成交通益便而交涉亦日以益繁矣

自葡人英人以鴉片販售我國嗜者日衆林則徐惡其害民也建議禁之乃收外商所存鴉片二萬餘箱盡焚之禁不得更販英人不服以兵艦侵江浙乘勝逼直隸京師大震罷林則徐與英議和割香港賠兵費實爲喪師失地之始時道光二十二年也

環顧四鄰小邦其文化皆不我及 the petty states about us were all our inferiors in civilization. 故自號曰中國初未知地球之大小也 we styled our land the Middle Kingdom without the slightest idea as to the actual size of the Earth. 我國不審外情 we knew nothing of the world at large. 不圖自強 we made no effort at reorganization 外交失敗 diplomatic defeats. 迭屢見不已也 have been many and frequent. 元世祖 Kublai Khan. 倭掠歐洲 expeditions into Europe. 歐亞之往來始頻 intercourse between Europe and Asia became more frequent. 然道陸而行 the overland journey, however. 道途險遠 was hazardous and long. 明季 the close of the Ming Dynasty. 葡萄牙 Portugal; the Portuguese. 初由海道至澳門 made the first sea-voyage to Macao. 荷蘭艦之遂據臺灣 the Dutch followed and occupied Formosa. 英法等國亦接踵而至 close upon their heels, came the English, French, and others. 交通益便 more facilities for communication have been provided. 嗜者 those craving for it. 惡其害民也 having a strong antipathy against this general vice. 建議禁之 advocated its suppression. 箱 chests. 不服 would not submit. 乘勝 taking advantage of their victories. 逼 to threaten. 大震 panic-stricken. 罷 to dismiss. 議和 to make peace with. 割香港 to cede Hongkong. 兵費 war indemnity. 實爲喪師失地之始 this was the first instance where we were obliged to own defeat by the cession of territory. 時道光二十二年也 it took place in the 22nd year of the Reign of Tao-Kuang.

## 第十九課 續

清咸豐初年我國官吏捕盜於英艦又殺  
 法教士兵爭又起當時廷議和戰無定策  
 紛擾三年英法聯軍逼都城清帝避居熱  
 河俄人調停和局乃以九龍界英而俄亦  
 取外興安嶺地以爲酬謝  
 安南琉球朝鮮皆我屬國也光緒七年法  
 人侵安南劉永福率黑旗兵破之越三年  
 法軍又至諒山我將馮子材又破之法既  
 不得逞乃以海軍攻臺灣福州我艦隊盡  
 失於是安南遂屬於法  
 日本既滅琉球又窺朝鮮光緒二十年朝  
 鮮內亂我師援之日兵亦繼至亂平議撤  
 兵不決釁端遂開我師連戰皆敗陸軍既  
 潰海軍亦殲旅順威海衛相繼淪陷不得  
 已乃割遼東臺灣以和

捕盜於英艦 to arrest pirates on board a British vessel.\* 法教士 a French priest.\* 兵爭又起 war again broke out. 廷議和戰無定策 during the crisis the authorities then in Peking were undecided either to continue the war or to sue for peace. 紛擾三年 three years was thus recklessly spent. 聯軍 the allies. 避 fled. 俄人調停和局 the Russians mediated for peace. 以爲酬謝 as their compensation. 安南 Annam. 琉球 Loo Choo. 朝鮮 Korea. 劉永福 Liu Yung-fu. 黑旗兵 the Black Flag regiments. 馮子材 General Fung Tze-tzai. 我艦隊盡失, our fleet was annihilated. 破 to repulse. 既滅 having annexed. 又窺 they began to cast a covetous eye on. 內亂 a rebellion. 我師援之 we sent an army to her rescue. 既平 after the restoration of order. 議撤兵 there arose the question of evacuation. 不決釁端遂開 this question not having been successfully disposed of, hostilities soon broke out. 潰 utterly routed. 殲 perished. 相繼淪陷 to fall into the hands of the enemy one after the other. 以和 in order to secure peace

\*注意 此篇英艦法教士所以宜用單數者因原文專指亞羅船及西林縣之殺某教士事故不能用多數。

## 第二十課 續

俄人建築西比利亞鐵路本有蠶食滿洲之志  
 見日本之取遼東惡其不便於己也乃挾法德  
 二國令日本以遼東還我未幾山東殺德教士  
 德人藉口據膠洲於是俄據旅順大連灣法據  
 廣洲灣英據威海衛國勢益蹙清德宗恥之欲  
 變法自強大臣或不便之會義和團倡言能禦  
 槍礮端王剛毅徐桐輩欲藉之以逐洋人斥西  
 法遂慫恿之擾亂日甚德公使及日本書記皆  
 遇害於是德法俄英美奧意日本八國聯軍陷  
 京師清孝欽后及德宗出奔太原國幾亡而俄  
 兵之在滿洲者遷延不撤遂釀日俄之戰而滿  
 洲居民亦大受其害

嗚呼自鴉片戰爭以來六十餘年間割地者八  
 喪屬國者三賠兵費者七萬萬豈不恫哉

西比利亞 Siberia. 蠶食 to encroach upon. 志 aim. 不便 menace.  
 挾 with the support of. 殺 to murder. 德教士 German missionaries.  
 德人藉口 the German using this as a pretext. 國勢益蹙 China  
 thus suffered a further reduction in area. 德宗 Emperor Kuang-  
 Hsu. 恥之 to consider it a great disgrace. 大臣或不便之 a certain  
 number of the powerful factions at court did not like it. 義和團 the  
 Boxers. 倡言 to claim. 能禦槍礮 invulnerable to bullets. 斥西  
 法 to condemn western reforms. 慫恿 to encourage. 日本書記  
 (counsellor of the Japanese Legation. 清孝欽后 Empress Tze-Hsi.  
 國幾亡 China was on the verge of destruction. 而俄兵之在滿洲  
 者遷延不撤 the subsequent dilatoriness on the part of Russia to  
 evacuate Manchuria. 遂釀成日俄之戰 finally gave rise to the  
 Russo-Japanese war. 而滿洲居民亦大受其害 and the inhabitants  
 of Manchuria were ruined beyond description. 鴉片戰爭 the  
 Opium War.

## 第二十一課

## 西湖

域中號西湖者三十有一而山水之秀麗以杭州之西湖爲最

湖之中爲孤山路孤山時立湖心下有蘇隄自南而北有橋六界湖爲二東曰外湖西曰裏湖裏湖之勝以玉帶橋爲最外湖之勝以三潭印月爲最湖北曰北山路寶石之塔葛嶺之井靈隱之幽秀韜光之奇峭三天竺之鬱深怪石冷泉連巖合澗應接不暇

湖南曰南山路南屏如障雷峯如筆登南高峯可以遠望錢塘江登鳳凰嶺得龍井以茶名層崖壁立飛流傾瀉其水與九溪會溯溪而上得十八澗泉之勝歎觀止焉

湖濱南宋故蹟不可勝數而岳武穆林和靖之墓最著前清功臣曾左彭李諸祠碁峙其間並擅林亭之勝游人爭趨焉

山水之秀麗 pretty scenery. 界 to divide. 幽秀 the singular beauty. 奇峭 the steepness. 怪石冷泉連巖合澗 with gorges so rocky, streams so delicious, and cliffs and rapids so numerous. 障 screen. 筆 brush. 湖濱南宋故蹟不可勝數 the country bordering on the Lake abounds in monuments of historic value dating back to the Southern Sung Dynasty. 而岳武穆林和靖之墓爲最著 of these the most reknown are the tombs of General Yoh Fei and Ling Ho Chen. 前清功臣曾左彭李諸祠碁峙其間 in the midst of the ancient monuments stand the more recent memorial temples of the great statesmen of the Manchu dynasty, such as Tseung Kwoh Fang, Tso Tsung Tang, Pang Yik Liu, Li Hung Chang, etc. 並擅林亭之勝 they rival each other in architectural splendour and judicious arrangement. 游人爭趨焉 streams of sight-seers flock into them all the year round.

## 第二十二課 行旅

墨煙繚繞一日千里非汽車耶。颺輪疾轉乘風破浪非汽船耶。熙熙攘攘絡繹不絕非乘車乘舟之旅客耶。吾嘗廁身其間常覺喧譁擾亂毫無秩序時而較錙銖則索票價也時而相攘奪則爭坐位也時而相怒罵則失竊也醜態百出諸惡必備以爲行旅之苦大抵如斯矣及漫遊歐美親歷各國之舟車則見夫行客按單納價依價列席從無隱絀金錢凌亂槍次煩管理人過問者茵褥器具整齊修潔從無玩弄而污損之者乘降之時老稚婦女常居先壯者常居後從無雜糅而衝突者偶值坐不能容壯者雖先至遇老稚婦女必起而讓坐焉嗚呼此直文明之美風也吾國人以開化最早著乃不於是加之意乎

墨煙繚繞 enveloped in a dense cloud of smoke. 汽車 railway train 颺輪 propeller wheel. 乘風 to battle with the wind. 破浪 to cut through the seas. 吾嘗廁身其間 whenever I had an occasion to travel. 時而較錙銖則索票價也 now and then one would make a fuss on account of the fare. 醜態百出諸惡必備 there were in short, all sorts of confusion and unpleasantness. 按單納價 to pay fare at the price stated on the ticket. 從無隱絀金錢凌亂槍次 there was no attempt to cheat, or to take up quarters at the expense of a fellow passenger. 雜糅 to jostle. 吾國人以開化最早著 our nation enjoys the reputation of possessing the oldest civilization in the world. 乃不於是加之意乎 and should we not pay more attention to such matters?

## 第二十三課 學問

崔生質敏試輒高列然性傲慢常陵其友先生戒之曰學問誠有益然不得其用反受其害

崔生愕然曰此學生所不審者敢問學問何以能爲害先生曰吾語汝譬如得一健馬善用其力勿令駢弛則能駕車服箱載人以行苟恣其力而弗能約必斷勒碎車顛越車上之人矣崔生曰此生所知者

先生曰又如河水使之順流則河之左右得資灌溉田必肥沃若去塘決防激流奔迅則損田禾漂屋宇矣崔生曰生亦知之

先生曰水行恃舟舟行恃舵舵定則進退可以自如若把舵傾側船將覆崔生曰生亦知之

先生曰爾明此數事耶學問亦復類此正用之則益反用之則害崔生曰生悟矣生悟矣由是深自斂抑不敢復以所學驕人

傲慢 haughty. 常陵其友 and often looked down upon his friends. 學問誠有益 knowledge is beneficial. 然不得其用反受其害 provided it is properly used. 勿令駢弛 you must not let him become turbulent. 而弗能約 beyond your control. 斷勒 to break the rein. 碎車 to send the carriage to pieces. 顛越車上之人 to throw the occupants out of the carriage. 使之順流 when it pursues its natural course. 則河之左右得資灌溉 the land on either bank of the river will be drained. 漂屋宇 to carry off buildings. 水行恃舟 when one travels by water he needs a boat. 舵定則進退可以自如 it is the helm that regulates its movement. 如把舵傾側 if the hand at the helm is not strong enough. 覆 capsized. 生悟矣 I see my folly. 深自斂抑 to try to be more modest. 不敢復以所學驕人 and boasted of what he knew no more.



## 第二十四課 錢業

錢幣爲流通之物以營實業則母子相生其源日裕然有財者未必能營業而營業者又往往乏母財欲使二者得以相通則錢業實爲其中樞

錢業之種類甚多曰錢莊曰票號曰銀行雖其資本之大小範圍之廣狹各有不同而皆以存款借款爲業者也存款之法無定期者隨時皆可支用而取息最輕有定期者則於存款之時預約歸款之期其息最重而以期之長短爲等差借款之法或以物產抵押或以他人保證若平日名譽素足取信於人者則不必抵押保證亦得以借款大抵借款之息恆重於存款此錢業所以取贏之道也無錢業則財貨不通有餘者既積滯於無用不足者亦無以應緩急之需錢荒之弊立見百物皆因以不振矣

錢業 banking. 錢幣 money. 以營實業 when invested in business. 則母子相生 it will bear interest. 其源日裕 and thus continues to multiply itself. 欲使二者相通則錢業實爲其中樞 between these two parties, the banking system becomes the machine of exchange. 錢莊 cash shop. 票號 exchange merchants 銀行 banks. 雖其資本之大小範圍之廣狹各有不同 while these differ from one another in capital and scope. 而皆以存款借款爲業者也 their principal business consists of receiving funds on deposit and lending out money on interest. 無定期者 current deposits. 有定期者 fixed deposits. 或以物產抵押 either on the security of goods or property. 或以他人保證 or on endorsement. 若平日名譽素足取信於人者 any one whose credit is good. 大抵借款之息恆重於存款 as a rule, the interest on outstanding accounts is higher than that on deposit accounts. 取贏 to make a gain.

## 第二十五課 假貸

均是人也各有能力則各有可以自給之道至不能自給而有求於人恥矣雖然人之營業也必先有資本而後有贏利設或贏利未來而資本已罄則不能不假貸以濟之

通常假貸之法其利息之多寡還期之遠近必書於券及期不還或所還不及額則被假者可執券以責償

假貸者暫時通融之策非可常恃也故必豫計何日何地確有必至之款足以相抵而後可若一無可恃而貿貿然行之至期而不還其人執券相索吾將何所逃罪即幸而不甚相迫然信用既失從此不能取信於人亦自絕之道也

若夫代人假貸則必計其人之必不相負或吾力之足以代償然後可偶一爲之不然者人既負我而我亦不得不負人可不慎歟

假貸 credit. 均是人也各有能力 an able-bodied man. 則各有可以自給之道 should be able to earn his own living. 恥矣 it is a disgrace. 通常假貸之法 in an ordinary credit transaction. 利息之多寡 the rate of interest. 還期之遠近 the time for repayment. 被假者 the creditor. 責償 to enforce a claim. 假貸者暫時通融之策 credit should be regarded as an emergency measure only. 吾將何所逃罪 what excuse can we make. 即幸而不甚相迫 fortunate indeed, if he will not press his claim. 信用 credit. 亦自絕之道也 it is a fatal mistake. 或吾力之足以代償 or whether we are in a position to pay for him if necessary. 不給者 otherwise. 負 to disappoint.

## 第二十六課 抵質

假貸之有券所以期其必償也然世事之蕃變人心之不同每有出於意料之外或既及其期而力實不能償或蓄意不償而巧與相遁則假貸者將大受其累故非信用素孚苟欲借款於人則不能不藉於抵質抵質之法當假貸款項之時即以價值相當之產業若器物爲質是也及其期而償債則還之不能償則沒收其物而售之以抵所借焉

此其事或一人與一人行之或以錢業之肆行之又有以是爲專業者其名曰典或謂之當或謂之質或謂之押自都會以至鄉僻往往有之假貸者得因之以應急而業此者亦得藉利自贍誠兩利之術也

抵質 security. 假貸之有券 In credit transaction, we have an instrument of credit. 所以期其必償也 for the purpose of guarding against non-payment. 世事之蕃變 change of circumstances. 每出於意料之外 often bring about an issue which is entirely beyond one's expectations. 或蓄意不償而巧與相遁 others may have no intention of paying but would put up all sorts of excuses. 則假貸者將大受其累 the creditor in either case has much to lose. 即以價值相當之產業若器物爲質是也 the putting up by way of pledge of any real estate, or an article of furniture of an equal value. 則沒收其物 the security may be forfeited. 抵 to make good. 此其事 transactions of this character. 或一人與一人 between individuals. 當, 質 pawn shops. 押 a security company. 自都會以至鄉僻往往有之 they exist in great cities as well as small towns. 誠兩利之術也 This is a system that promises profit to both parties to the deal.

## 第二十七課 堅定

某國有一少年在兵營爲鼓手一日大操畢將校會宴少年侍坐行酒大將欲慰之與酒曰汝亦盡一杯少年辭曰吾不嗜酒大將曰汝終日擊鼓甚勞少飲酒以舒之無害少年固辭不飲大將不悅副將在旁曰汝胡違大將命違大將之命者不可爲兵於是少年正容曰吾入伍已三年未嘗一違將命然飲酒非兵士職且害於身故不能從於是副將怪之欲試少年故厲聲曰汝必飲一杯是軍令也違令將斬汝少年改容曰軍令不勝恐懼然有故不能從昔者吾父以酒獲疾遂不起吾入營時吾母戒曰汝終身勿飲酒雖有大將之命不能破慈母之戒聲淚俱下坐中將校莫不感動由是少年益受大將信任遂被擢用

堅定 presence of mind. 鼓手 a drummer. 大操 a great maneuver 大將 the commander-in-chief. 酒 drink. 副將 the officer next in command. 正容 gravely. 吾入伍已三年 I have joined the company three years. 未嘗一違將命 and have never disobeyed an order. 飲酒非兵士職 it is not a soldier's duty to drink. 身 health. 欲試少年 he wished to test the courage of this young man. 改容 with a changed countenance. 軍令不勝恐懼 I have always due respects for a military order. 吾父以酒獲疾 my father was taken sick because of drink. 遂不起 and never recovered. 不能破慈母之戒 I could not very well break the admonition of my beloved mother. 聲淚俱下 and he sobbed. 坐中將校莫不感動 all the officers present were greatly moved. 由是少年益受大將信任 this incident marked the beginning of the young man's rise in the estimation of his general. 遂被擢用 and soon was promoted to responsible positions.

## 第二十八課 蘇武

蘇武漢杜陵人也武帝時使匈奴其副與前降匈奴者謀劫單于母以歸漢事洩武曰事如此必及我我見辱乃死重負國矣欲自殺從者止之

單于果召武武曰屈節辱命雖生何面目以歸漢引佩刀自刺或抱持之急召醫鑿地爲坎置燭火覆武其上蹈其背以出血武氣絕半日乃蘇

單于壯其節遣人候問愈欲降之武不爲動單于幽之於大窖中絕其飲食會雨雪武以雪和獸毛吞之數日不死匈奴以爲神乃徙之北海上無人處使牧羴曰羴乳乃得歸

武掘野鼠採草實食之杖漢節牧羊臥起操持節旄盡落

時匈奴對漢使輒詭言武已死漢使訪知武所在乃託言漢帝射雁於雁足得繫帛書言武在某澤中單于大驚乃歸武

武留匈奴十九年始以強壯出及還鬚髮盡白

武帝時 in the days of Wu Ti. 使匈奴 was sent as an envoy to the Hsiung Nu. 副 assistant commissioner. 劫 to kidnap. 事洩 the secret leaked out. 事如此必及我 under these circumstances there is no possible escape for me. 重負國矣 I would have sinned against my government. 屈節 to lower one's dignity; to surrender one's self. 辱命 to bring one's mission into disrepute. 或抱持之 but some one embraced him. 鑿地爲坎置燭火 a hole was made into the ground and in this a fire was kindled. 覆武其上 the body of So Wu was then placed, with his face flat on the ground, across the hole. 蹈其背以出血 his back was walked over until blood came out. 半日乃蘇 it was fully half a day before he gained consciousness again. 壯其節 admired his determination. 降 to make one submit. 幽 to imprison. 於大窖中 in an underground cell. 以爲神 he was considered to possess supernatural powers. 羴 a ram. 乳 impregnate. 漢節 the ambassadorial sceptre of Han. 旄盡落 and its tassels were all off. 於雁足得繫帛書 and found a letter written on a piece of silk tied to the foot of a wild goose.

## 第二十九課 待外國人之道

虎狼至暴也。鷹隼至鷙也。然不聞有自相食者。何也？愛其類也。今夫人可以不愛其類乎？一家之人吾類也，吾愛之；積家而成國，則一國之人皆吾類也，吾亦愛之；積國而成世界，全世界之人，獨非吾類乎？吾奈何獨不愛之乎？

未開化之民，往往以他國之人言語服飾之不同，風俗禮貌之各異，而等之於禽獸，則以刻酷輕薄之行遇之，及交通既盛，文明大啓，始知同爲人類，則無論膚色若何，程度若何，皆當待之以道。卽不幸兩國開戰，互相攻伐，然僑寓之商民，宜保護之，被傷之俘虜，宜療治之。夫兩國開戰之時，而國人之互相待遇，猶宜如此，則平日可知矣。

是以本國人與外國人雖不無親疏之別，然同爲人類，則應對不可以不謹，交易不可以不信，見其迷惑而指導之，值其困窮而周救之，固無分於本國外國也。

然不聞有自相食者 nevertheless, we never heard of either of them preying upon themselves. 愛其類也 they love their kindred. 積家而成國 a nation is but an amalgamation of families. 未開化之民 savages. 往往 are apt. 風俗 customs. 禮貌 manners. 而等之於禽獸 to classify them as birds or beasts or lower animals. 刻酷 cruel. 輕薄 disrespectful. 遇之 towards them. 及交通既盛文明大啓 but the more improved the facilities for communication the more advanced the people in civilization. 始知 we are enabled to know. 同爲人類則無論膚色若何程度若何皆當待之以道 that man irrespective of the colour of his skin or the standard of his living, should be treated decently. 被傷之俘虜 and the wounded prisoners. 宜療治之 shall be given proper medical care. 夫兩國開戰之時而國人之互相待遇猶宜如此則平日可知矣 think of the treatment that is required from nations at war, and you may gain some idea as to how we should conduct ourselves in times of peace. 本國人與外國人雖不無親疏之別 while there exist different degrees of friendship between fellow citizens and aliens. 見其迷惑而指導之 in the matter of giving information to those who have lost their way. 固無分於本國外國也 there is practically no difference between a fellow-citizen and an alien.

## 第三十課 慈善事業

甲乙富翁各居一村而皆以力行慈善聞然甲翁以慈善罄其資而村人亦貧惟乙不然不及十年而村人皆能自贍焉

甲大怪之乃造乙而問焉曰吾與子皆力行慈善而成效何以大不同

乙曰請先問君之所謂慈善者何也

甲曰吾以施與爲主歲寒施衣粥年凶賑錢穀途遇乞者必投以錢凡有求助於吾者必有以應之而待施者多傾吾家而不給

乙曰惡勞好逸人之常情今君不擇人而施使彼可不勞而獲也故待施者日多是惠之適以害之也

甲曰然則君所行若何

乙曰吾設學堂若干所其課程或全日或半日或惟夜課凡來學者皆不收學費吾又設工廠若干所集無業者教之以藝必使能自給而後已苟非老幼廢疾之人決不使其徒手而得吾錢焉而村人皆勤於職業故處境日裕於是甲翁乃服

觀於兩富翁之言則慈善家可以知所擇矣



甲乙富翁 two rich men, A. and B. 而皆以力行慈善聞 and both were well known for their generosity. 而村人皆能自贍焉 the people of his village were all able to support themselves. 吾與子皆力行慈善 both you and I have devoted ourselves to charities. 而成效何以大不相同 how is it that our results are entirely different? 吾以施與爲主 my policy has been the scattering of my wealth. 粥 congee. 凡有求助於吾者必有以應之 I have never refused any one who has applied to me for help. 而待施者多 and yet the number of persons requiring my help increases. 傾吾家而不給 I have given away all I had and yet it is not sufficient. 惡勞 to dislike work. 好逸 to love ease. 是惠之適以害之也 and your kindness is their ruin. 學費 tuition fees. 工廠 factories. 無業者 unemployed. 藝 work; manual labour. 苟非老幼廢疾之人決不使其徒手而得吾錢焉 I would permit no one to receive pecuniary aid from me, unless he is an old man, infant or invalid. 觀於兩富翁之言 the conversation between these men ought to convince philanthropists as to whose example they should follow.

## 第三十一課 無自餒

有游歐洲歸者盛稱英法諸國之文明嘗私語其友曰吾觀歐洲學術之精進商業之發達軍械之精利實白種人之聰明強毅有以致之吾國雖效西法然黃種智力遠不如人恐終望塵莫及也

友曰今日歐洲之文明遠過吾國吾亦知之若必謂吾人智力不如白種則又未之敢信

學術之發達由於書籍書籍之流傳由於印刷夫始創印刷之法固中國人也

商業之興必藉航海大洋萬里茫無際涯不有指南針又焉能至然創指南針者亦中國人也槍礮之利無堅不摧其力之猛烈實生於火藥而火藥亦中國所自創也

當元明時我國與阿刺伯交通漸繁印刷法指南針及火藥漸由阿刺伯流入歐洲遂以致今日之文明我國人既能創造安見智力之不如人乎

夫文明利器我中國創之歐人師吾成法乃能勝吾若以吾人之善於創造更取歐洲成法而講求焉安知其必不如人乎白種人也黃種人也有爲者亦若是吾何必自餒哉

無自餒 Don't be disappointed. 有游歐洲歸者 a certain man who has returned from a trip in Europe. 盛稱 is loud in his praise of. 私語 By way of a friendly conversation. 軍械之精利 the perfection of their weapons. 實白種人之聰明強毅有以致之 all this is due to the intellectual power of the white man. 恐終望塵莫及也 I am afraid that we shall always be left behind. 夫始創印刷之法固中國人也 the inventor of the art of printing, however, was a Chinese. 航海 navigation. 指南針 a mariner's compass. 槍礮之利無堅不摧 nothing is strong enough to withstand effective cannonading. 火藥 gun-powder. 漸由阿剌伯流入歐洲 and from Arabia they gradually found their way into Europe. 遂以致今日之文明 the result is their civilization as we see to-day. 文明利器 instruments of civilization. 有爲者亦若是 we can do the same if we only try.

## 第三十二課 猶太

泰西諸國以文明稱者無不歸功於宗教而其宗教之始祖曰摩西曰耶穌皆猶太人也然則猶太人者其世界至文明之民族耶

泰西諸國以富厚稱者皆得力於商務而商務之巨擘必推猶太人然則猶太人者其世界最有勢力之民族耶

然而猶太人亡國以後散處各國所至爲人輕視爲人踐踏其流寓之地與其國人訟鮮得直蓋法官律師皆以賤種外視之也在俄國所遭則尤慘酷無人理喜則括其財怒則毀其廬殺其人劫其蓄積兒童行之父兄以爲是宜然不之禁也平民爲之官吏以爲是宜然不之阻也試以一事徵之光緒二十九年俄屬某地暴徒擾亂旅居之猶太人凡三萬餘悉被驅逐流離轉徙死亡不可勝計嗚呼亡國之民其慘狀若此可不懼哉

宗教之始祖 the founder of the religion. 摩西 Moses. 耶穌 Jesus. 猶太人 Jews. 民族 people. 而商務之巨擘必推猶太人 the Jews are the recognized commercial people of the world. 最有勢力 the most influential. 亡國以後 since their country was wiped out of existence. 輕視 to look down upon. 踐踏 to trample upon. 其流寓之地 與其國人訟辯得直 when they have an occasion to go to court with the natives, they get anything but justice. 蓋法官律師皆以賤種外視之也 for the reason that both judges and lawyers discriminate against them as a despised race. 在俄國所遭則尤慘酷無人理 the fate of the Russian Jews is the more appalling. 阻 to interfere with. 俄屬某地 in a certain place of Russia. 暴徒擾亂 a riot. 驅逐 to expel. 流離轉徙 a wandering life. 亡國之民 a race without a country.

## 第三十三課 擇業

孟子曰人皆可以爲堯舜拿破崙曰不能二字非吾法人所當用也然則天下之人苟致力於一業持之以恆久不畏難不苟安未有終無所就者也

雖然人性之不同如其面焉稟賦有鈍慧幹力有強弱斯固然矣即使天才果高又有宜有不宜非一能卽無所不能也

自古之言善戰者無如項羽羽雖不終然以平民起兵七十餘戰未嘗敗北固古今所罕覩者則信乎羽之天才有以大過人宜其無所學而不能矣然羽嘗讀書又嘗學劍皆無所成則正所謂有宜有不宜也使羽果致力於書與劍未必遂後於人特望其如戰功之高足以照耀千古則必不可得者耳是故凡人擇業必先審吾性之所近而後爲之母趨時尙母慕虛榮則才大者可以成卓絕之業才小者亦不至無所就否則用違其才幸而有成其用力之難易所就之大小必非用其所長者比也

人皆可以爲堯舜 it is quite possible for each man to become a Yao or Shun. 致力 to devote all his energy. 不畏難 let no difficulty discourage us. 不苟安 and let no success stay our progress. 人性之不同如其面焉 as men's faces are seldom exactly alike so are their natures. 稟賦 natural gifts. 幹力 strength. 斯固然矣 all this goes without saying. 自古之言善戰者 of all the famous warriors of the past. 無如項羽 no one can compare favorably with Hong Yu. 羽雖不終 although he died a pronounced failure. 天才 genius. 宜其所學無不能矣 and it would seem that there was nothing he could not master. 使羽果致力於書與劍 had he devoted himself to study and sword wrestling. 未必遂後於人 he would perhaps have been able to do as well as any other man. 特望其如戰功之高足以照耀千古則必不可得者耳 but he certainly could not have been such a success as he was in the battlefield, a star which lights all the ages, the past, the present, and the future. 毋趨時尚 never take up a profession simply because it seems to be the favorite one with everybody. 毋慕虛榮 and never take up one simply because it promises to give you more standing.

## 第三十四課 分功

工人製器欲其力省而物精其道無他則分功是耳

人之營業必先飭其材治其器而後從事焉使不逾時而易業則向之所飭所治皆無用矣就業之始其心未必能遽專其力未必能遽奮也必有頃焉乃臻服習使不逾時而易業則向之所服習者又無用矣工藝之事益習則益精常見繁難之工習者治之若行所無事或且熟極生巧因以創新奇之法焉分功之利蓋如是

今試以治鍼言一人獨爲窮日之力不過成數十鍼而歐美之鍼業則分其功爲十八冶者拉者截者銳者或磋其銛或穿其鼻或淬之而使犀或藥之而使耀或選純焉或計數焉或包裹焉或納匣焉皆析而爲之而未嘗有兼者一日之功可得八萬鍼以十八人計之是人日四千鍼也較之一人獨爲其程功之速殆及百倍嗚呼一鍼之微而分功之效乃至於是則他業可推而知矣



力省 to save labour. 物精 to obtain excellent product. 分功 division of labour. 必先飭其材 should first of all select the right material. 治其器 and make his instruments effective. 而後從事焉 before he commences work. 使不逾時而易業 if he should change his trade every now and then. 就業之始 when one is new to his work. 其心未必能遽專其力未必能遽奮也 he may not know how to concentrate his mind or to use his skill. 必有頃焉 it takes time. 乃臻服習 to become used to a thing. 繁難之工 a piece of tedious and difficult work. 習者 the one who is in the habit of doing it. 治之若行所無事 attend to it with apparent ease. 熟極生巧 it is dexterity that begets skill. 因以創新奇之法焉 which leads to invention. 獨爲 by himself. 窮日之力 to work whole day. 冶 to melt iron. 拉 to pull. 截 to cut. 銳 to sharpen. 磋其銛 to polish the point. 或穿其鼻 to make the hole. 淬使犀 harden it by tempering. 藥使耀 to brighten it with a chemical solution.

## 第三十五課 魯之裕

魯之裕字亮儕少習武稍長宦開封時田文鏡督河南方嚴甚提鎮司道以下受署惟謹一日田公令裕往摘中牟李令印卽攝中牟裕爲微行大布之衣草冠騎驢入境父老數百扶而道苦之間曰聞有魯公來代吾令客在開封知否裕問故曰吾令賢不忍其去也又數里見儒衣冠者簇簇然謀曰好官可惜伺魯公來盍訴之或搖手曰咄田公有令雖十魯公奚能爲且魯公方取其官而代之甯肯捨己從人耶裕心敬之而無言至縣見李貌溫雅揖裕入曰印待公久矣裕拱手曰觀公狀貌被服非豪縱者且賢稱噪於士民下車未久而庫虧何耶李曰某濱南萬里外人也別母游京師十年得中牟借俸迎母至於被劾是吾罪也言未畢泣下裕曰吾喝甚具湯浴我徑詣別室且浴且思不能決良久擊盆水誓曰依凡而行者非夫也具衣冠辭李李大驚曰公何之曰之省與之印不受強之曰毋累公裕擲印鏗然厲聲曰君非知魯亮儕者竟馳去合邑士民焚香送之

字 alias. 少習武 had undergone a thorough military training when young. 宦 to become an official. 時田文鏡督河南 Tien Wen-Chien was at that time Viceroy of Honan. 方嚴甚 and was well known for his rigorous discipline. 提 the Provincial commander-in-chief. 鎮 the Brigadier-General. 司 the Treasurer. 道 taotai. 以下 and lesser officials. 受署維謹 were always ready to do his bidding. 往摘中牟李令印 to proceed to Chung Meu and deprive Magistrate Li of his seal of office. 攝 to act in one's stead. 微行 in disguise. 不忍其去也 we could not afford to lose him. 盍訴之 let us inform him of our grievances. 雖十魯公奚能爲 even though there were ten Messrs. Lu, what good would they do? 甯肯捨己從人耶 would he be willing to give up his own interests for the sake of others? 下車未久 you have not been in charge long. 庫虧 a deficit in the treasury. 借俸迎母 I advanced myself my salary in order to defray the expenses of my mother's journey whom I have sent for. 吾暍甚 I have been exposed to excessive heat. 具湯浴我 give me a hot bath. 依凡 ties of usage. 具衣冠 clad in his official uniform. 毋累公 don't get yourself into trouble on my account.

## 第三十六課 續

裕既至省先謁兩司告之故皆曰汝病喪心耶早詣轅則兩司先在名紙未投已傳呼令入田公盛氣迎之旁列司道下文武十餘人睨裕曰汝不理縣事而來何也曰有所啓曰印何在曰在中牟曰交何人曰李令田公乾笑左右顧曰天下摘印者甯有是耶皆曰無之兩司起立謝曰某等教飭亡素致有狂悖之員請公并劾以魯付某嚴訊朋黨情弊以懲其餘裕進曰裕一寒士以求官故來河南得官中牟喜甚恨不連夜排衙視事不意入境時李令之民心如是士心如是見其人知虧帑故又如是明公未知其然故裕不敢不自公若以爲無可哀憐則裕再往取印未遲不然轅外官數十皆求印不得者也裕何人敢逆公意耶田默然兩司目之退裕不謝走出至屋霑外田公變色下階呼之裕入田公取所戴珊瑚冠覆魯頭嘆曰奇男子此冠宜汝戴也微汝吾幾誤劾賢員但疏去矣奈何裕曰幾日曰五日快馬不能追也裕曰裕少時能日行三百里公果欲追疏裕固能之公許之遂行五日而疏還中牟令竟無恙裕以此名聞天下

先謁兩司 first of all he called upon the Treasurer and the Judge. 病喪心 Crazy. 轅 vice-regal yamen. 田公盛氣迎之 His Excellency Tien received him with a very stern countenance. 旁列司道下文武十餘人 by him were seated upwards of ten officials, civil and military, including the Treasurer, Judge, Taotais, and lesser authorities. 睨裕曰 looking at Yu askance he said. 汝不理縣事而來何也 what do you come here for, instead of remaining at your post. 乾笑 to smile sneeringly. 謝 to apologize. 劾 to denounce. 朋黨情弊 feelings of friendship. 恨不連夜排衙視事 I wished I could be in my court attending to my business the very night of my appointment. 入境時民心如是 when I arrived in his district, I found out the actual relationship in which he stood with his people. 公若以爲無可哀憐 if your excellency should be of opinion that the man is not entitled to further consideration at your hands. 逆公意 to go against your wishes. 至屋霤外 he got beyond the place under the eaves. 變色 calmed down. 微汝吾幾誤劾賢員 but for you, I would have cashiered a worthy official. 疏 memorial.

## 第三十七課 蝗

害稼之蟲莫甚於蝗我國北方多有之旱時尤盛其來也羣飛蔽天所過食禾稼草木赤地無遺俗以其爲禍之烈也謂爲神不敢捕捉任其爲害而已唐開元四年山東大蝗民祭且拜坐視食苗不敢捕姚崇奏云蝗畏人易驅又田皆有主使自救其地必不憚勞請夜設火坎其旁且焚且瘞乃可盡也於是出御史爲捕蝗使分道殺蝗得蝗十四萬石時議者喧嘩帝疑以問崇對曰今飛蝗所在充滿日益蕃息且河南河北家無宿藏苟一不穫則百姓流離安危係之夫討蝗縱不能盡不愈於養以遺患乎帝然之盧懷慎曰凡天災安可以人力制也且殺蟲多必戾和氣願公思之崇曰今蝗甚多縱之穀且盡如百姓何殺蟲以救人有禍則崇任之不以累公也蝗害盡息

蝗 locusts. 旱時 during a drought season.  
尤 particularly. 羣飛蔽天 they fly in an immense  
cloud. 所過食禾稼草木 devouring all vegetation.  
赤地無遺 and devastating the whole country as  
they go. 任其爲害而已 but permitted them to  
go on with their work of destruction. 御史  
censors. 爲捕蝗使 as Anti-Locust Commissioners.  
分道殺蝗 to carry on a campaign against the  
insect in their respective districts. 蕃息 to  
multiply. 凡天災安可以人力制也 a calamity  
which is the will of Heaven, never per-  
mits of human control. 且殺蟲多必戾和氣  
besides, the destruction of so many insects is a sin  
against the nature of Heaven. 有禍則崇任之  
the responsibility lies entirely with me.

## 第三十八課

沈雲英

雲英者沈將軍至緒女也將軍守備道  
 州張獻忠破武昌過洞庭而西勢張甚  
 未幾攻圍道州將軍出戰歿於軍雲英  
 年十七告州人曰賊雖累勝然皆烏合  
 不足畏吾女子義不忍與賊俱生吾爲  
 父死諸君爲鄉里死卽道州可完孰與  
 乞命狂賊之手坐視妻若子爲虜乎衆  
 壯其意皆曰諾城門開雲英甲而馳一  
 城人奮挺隨之直前擊賊賊出不意駭  
 亂皆自相蹂藉以奔遂解道州圍得父  
 屍城中人皆縞素助雲英成喪時賊所  
 過城率不戰下而以死全道州城者雲  
 英父子也郡守上功詔贈至緒副總兵  
 加雲英遊擊將軍署守道州雲英會稽  
 人也距今百餘年州人於麻灘建祠祀  
 之四時不絕

將軍守備道州 the general was charged with the defence of  
 Taochow. 破 captured. 勢張甚 and was daily gaining strength.  
 未幾攻圍道州 soon he laid siege to Taochow. 賊雖累勝 although  
 the rebels have been led from victory to victory. 然皆烏合之衆  
 but they are a motley force who knows no discipline. 不足畏 and  
 from which we have nothing to fear. 孰與乞命狂賊之手 is it not  
 better than to seek mercy at the hands of the blood-thirsty robbers.  
 坐視妻若子爲虜乎 or to see with hands-folded your own wives and  
 children become their captives. 賊出不意駭亂 the rebels, taken by  
 surprise. 皆自相蹂藉以奔 all took to their heels and in the con-  
 fusion that ensued, trampled over their own comrades. 遂解道  
 州圍 the city was saved. 時賊所過城率不戰下 hitherto the rebels  
 had carried most cities on their way without resistance. 詔贈至緒  
 副總兵 by an imperial decree, Chi Hsu was granted the posthumous  
 rank of a Brigadier-General. 游擊 lieutenant-colonel. 署守道州  
 and made the acting commandant of the Taochow garrison. 四時  
 不絕 sacrifices are still offered every three months.



## 第三十九課 金字塔

阿非利加洲之東北有國曰埃及五千年前已以文明  
 著稱於世所謂金字塔者皆其先王之遺塚也  
 塔材用花崗石側視之則成金字形故曰金字塔駢列  
 可七十餘處最鉅者居尼羅河西岸高四百八十七尺  
 基廣七百六十八尺面積蔽二十四萬方尺石塊之重  
 有至數千萬斤者  
 方其建造役萬人三十餘年而畢事規模雄闊可爲世  
 界偉觀我國長城庶幾匹之  
 金字塔下多便房蓋以安置梓宮者宮以石爲之埃及  
 古俗最重藏尸人之死也先拔取其腦再去其腹中穢  
 物洗以桃椰酒實以珍香復縫其創口以鹽漬之七十  
 日後復洗滌之卷以麻布以物塗其上使如生人立之  
 室中親戚朋友悲哀而祭然後送之墓地故屍歷數千  
 年不腐發視之面如生  
 金字塔之外又有方尖塔上置女面獅身像則埃及所  
 崇祀之神也至今尙存

埃及 Egypt. 金字塔 pyramids. 遺塚 sepulchres. 尼羅河 the Nile River. 最鉅者 the Great Pyramid. 可爲世界偉觀 they are counted among the wonders of the world. 我國長城庶幾匹之 our Great Wall is a work that approaches it in magnitude. 便房 chambers. 藏尸 mummies. 桃椰油 bitumen. 方尖塔 sphinx. 塔上置女面獅身 in the form of a lion with the head of a woman. 像則埃及所崇祀之神也 it is the image of a popular Egyptian god. 至今尙存 it has been preserved to the present day.

## 第四十課 文字

言語可以交換人之思想然行遠而貽後當濟之以文字吾輩生古人之後而求古人之用心處今人之羣而紀今人之行事傳諸四方貽之後世使文明之道日趨精審在在均資文字文字者啓發文明一大利器也

上古之時結繩紀事今苗黎獠之屬斫取樹枝部其修短鉅細標準一事用識遺忘皆未足爲文字也文字之最早出者爲我國與埃及其初皆象形摹繪實物厥狀如畫而諸國文字咸胚胎於此其後錯綜變化各標一格愈變而愈離矣

文字派別分爲二種一主意義一主聲音我國文字以意義爲主數可數萬常用者亦數千最爲繁博象形字之後變而爲古文而篆而隸今日所通用者則楷書行書草書也

歐美各邦之文字皆發源於埃及其後轉爲希伯來以聲音爲主字母不逾數十而孳乳無窮爲用特簡今謂之羅馬字云

日本文字本出於我國其後有假名之制凡四十八字并合聯絡因音求義則近於羅馬字矣然漢字猶未能遽廢也

言語 words. 交換 exchange. 文字 forms of writing. 思想 thoughts. 古人 the ancients. 傳諸四方 to circulate far and wide. 後世 the generation to come. 上古之時結繩紀事 in the remotest times of our history, records were kept by knotted strings. 文字之最早出者爲我國與埃及 our own system and the Egyptian system are the oldest known writings of the world. 其初皆象形 they both began as picture-writings. 而諸國文字咸胚胎於此 picture-writing seems to have been the mother of all the languages now in use by the different nations of the world. 其後錯綜變化 through ages of developments and changes. 愈變而愈離矣 the more numerous the changes have been the less perceivable are the analogies. 主意義 ideographic. 主聲音 phonetic. 篆 the big seal character. 隸 the small seal character. 楷書 the model hand. 行書 the running hand. 草書 the rapid running hand. 希伯來 Hebrew. 羅馬字 Roman alphabets. 假名 the indivisible syllabic symbols.

## 第四十一課 活版

吾國之有書籍蓋四千餘年矣其始剖竹爲簡而以漆書之故著書至數十萬言儲藏卽已不易而傳布之難無論矣

秦漢之間乃有毛筆或書於縑或書於紙於是較竹書爲簡易而傳播之術不外抄錄南北朝學者每以手抄若干卷相誇其困難可想見也

漢之季已開印刷之端石經是也其後偶有仿刻者亦僅有五經九經不暇旁及至於五代馮道刻五經畢升造活字易石以木特趨簡易於是流行漸廣宋版之書至今猶有存者惟自宋以來刻版之風盛行而活字則用之者殊少至清代乾隆年間武英殿聚珍版出而其用始盛

原活版之所以不廣者有二故鏤字比行蟲疏苟簡不適於觀美一也再版三版又費綴集二也人人見此缺點而不爲之改良故遂忍置之耳

活版 movable type. 而傳布之難無論矣 to say nothing of the difficulty of circulating. 毛筆 a brush. 而傳播之術不外手抄 the way to give a book circulation, however, was through copying. 南北朝學者每以手抄若干千卷相誇其困難可想見也 the scholars of the Northern and Southern Dynasties took pride in the number of copies they made, sometimes going as high up as several thousand for each man, and we may imagine the difficulty under which they had to labour for education. 宋版之書至今尤有存者 books printed during the Sung Dynasty are still extant. 惟自宋以來 since the Sung Dynasty. 刻版之風盛行 the block system has grown in popularity. 原活版之所以不廣者有二故 the cause of the unpopularity of the movable type lies in the following facts. 鏤字 to engrave ; to cut. 比行 to arrange types in lines. 人人見此缺點 every one knows these defects. 而不爲之改良 but no one attempts to improve them. 故遂忽置之耳 this is why the method has been so long abandoned.

## 第四十二課 秦始皇

三代以前皆封建之世界也。諸侯各君其國而受命於天子，相傳禹會塗山，執玉帛者萬國，至殷則爲三千，至周則爲千七百。周室衰微，諸侯力爭，互相吞併，迄周之亡，存者僅七國。秦始皇既併六國，盡廢封建之制，分天下爲三十六郡，郡置守、監、尉以治之。自秦以來，雖時有行封建者，不久輒廢，而郡縣之制至今二千餘歲，莫之能改也。

始皇併六國後，使蒙恬北伐匈奴，收河南地爲四十四縣，築長城，起臨洮，至遼東，以拒匈奴。單于恐怖，絕幕北徙，不敢南下牧馬者凡二十餘年。又使恬除直道，自九原至甘泉，塹山湮谷，凡千八百里。北方既定，乃略取南越，置三郡，幅幘之廣，始倍於周時。

始皇以雄才大略，威震四表，爲亙古所未有。然窮奢極欲，大興土木，築咸陽阿房宮，又封泰山，禪梁父，巡遊海上，以求神仙，糜費無度，惡天下之議己也。乃燒詩書，坑儒生，長子扶蘇諫，則遣之監軍上郡。及始皇崩，少子胡亥自立，信用趙高，暴虐益甚，民不堪命。而陳勝等遂起於草澤，以亡秦。

三代 the three dynastic periods of Hsia, Shang and Chou. 封建之世界 land of feudalism. 諸侯 feudal lords. 各君其國 a sovereign ruler of his own domain. 而受命於天子 although subject to the orders of the Son of Heaven. 盡廢封建之制 to abolish all the remains of the ancient feudal institutions. 分天下爲三十六郡 to divide an empire into thirty-six provinces. 郡置守監尉以治之 each governed by a governor, a general, and a superintendent. 郡縣之制 the provincial form of government. 莫之能改也 with little or no change. 以拒匈奴 to keep out the Hsiung Nu. 雄才 capable. 大略 enterprising. 威 military renown. 爲亙古所未有 hitherto unequalled. 窮奢 extravagant. 極欲 wilful. 封 to "declare sacred." 禪 to visit. 惡天下之議己也 to show his antipathy to those who had heaped criticisms upon his head. 詩書 classics. 儒生 Confucian scholars. 諫 to remonstrate with. 少子胡亥自立 his second son, Hu Hai, seized the vacant throne and became Emperor. 信用 to be under one's influence. 亡 to overthrow.

## 第四十三課 通商

世界各國以其位置及氣候之不同天產物因之而異國民之才技亦有所偏長人工物因之而異故此國之所有往往爲彼國之所無於是國與國通商之事

我國所開商埠以與外人貿易者謂之通商口岸以我國之貨運出於外國謂之出口貨以外國之貨運入於我國謂之進口貨

凡進出口貨之比例有二大端其國進口貨少而出口貨多者國必漸富反是國必漸貧其進口貨生貨多熟貨少其出口貨熟貨多生貨少國必漸富反是國必漸貧

今本我國進出之貨價而核之每年出口貨之價值僅得進口貨之半且出口之貨以絲茶豆棉毛皮爲大宗舍茶而外皆生貨也進口之貨以布呢鐵器爲大宗則皆熟貨矣以我國土地之廣人口之衆而通商之效如此則工業不興而商業亦因而衰頹也且進口貨中鴉片頗占多數耗財而又弱民則爲害尤大矣



位置 geographical positions. 氣候 climatic conditions. 國民之才技亦有所偏長 and since their citizens possess different standards of ability and skill. 人工物 their manufactures. 於是有國與國通商之事 hence the necessity of interstate commerce. 通商口岸 a treaty port. 出口貨 ex-ports. 進口貨 imports. 比例 to compare. 生貨 raw materials. 熟貨 manufactured products. 今本我國進出之貨價而核之 now let us study the balance of our foreign trade. 豆 beans. 棉 cotton 毛皮 furs. 布 piece-goods. 呢 woollen goods. 鐵器 hardware. 以我國土地之廣人口之衆而通商之效如此 which is the net result of our foreign trade in spite of our area and population. 工業不興 industrial inactivity. 商業衰頹 commercial decline. 且進口貨中鴉片頗占多數 furthermore, opium constitutes a major portion of our import trade. 耗財 national poverty. 弱民 national weakness.

## 第四十四課 日光七色

吾人仰望日光若見爲白色實則日光非純一之色而爲各色集合而成也。今試於暗室中鑽一小穴引入日光取三稜玻璃承之使光線通過則日光分解其色有七所謂赤橙黃綠青藍紫是也。更取陀螺以七色紙糊其面依日光七色之序使廣狹適均將陀螺急轉之則七色混合而成白色。

雨後空中時見虹霓亦由日光分解而成者也。蓋是時空氣中尙餘無數雨點日光照之則反射而爲彩虹之七色與日光同其次序亦無以異。朝時日在東則虹見於西夕時日在西則虹見於東其爲受日光而反射固無可疑也。

一切物體本皆無色所以見種種之色者亦日光分解之作用也。日光照入物體七色皆備特物體性質不同而所吸收之色因之而異。凡日光之色爲物體吸收者則隱而不見惟不吸收之色反射於外故反射赤色則見爲赤反射黃色則見爲黃若七色皆反射則見爲白七色皆吸收則見爲黑。

日光七色 the solar spectrum. 實則日光非純一之色 in reality, the rays of the sun are not of one primary hue. 而爲各色集合而成也 but the blending of the hues. 三稜玻璃 a triangle glass prism. 陀螺 a top. 使廣狹適均 of equal width. 虹霓 rainbows. 亦由日光分解而成者也 they are formed by the diffraction of the sun's rays. 其爲受日光而反射固無可疑也 there is no room for doubt that it is the reflection of the rays of light. 一切物體本皆無色所以見種種之色者亦日光分解之作用也 all objects are colourless, and their colour is entirely due to the diffraction. 日光照入物體 when the light of the sun falls on an object. 特物體性質不同而所吸收之色因之而異 different objects, however, absorb different rays according to the substance of which they are made. 惟不吸收之色反射於外 only the hue or hues that are not absorbed are reflected. 故反射赤色則見爲赤 therefore, when the red rays are reflected we say it is red. 若七色皆反射 when an object reflects all the seven colours. 則爲白 it is white.

## 第四十五課

## 體育

在昔我國士皆習射人盡爲兵上之人居則爲卿相出則爲將帥其卒伍皆力田之民也故叔梁紇能舉國門之關墨子百舍重繭以救宋學者之注意於體育由來久矣

及戰國募兵而練之於是軍人自成一社會而士農工商皆不任其責自是以降學校之設又舍農工商而專屬於士士氣益衰非文雅風流卽行步規矩而勇敢活潑之風渺矣其間非無豪士健兒於山野之間私以武技相授受者然不見重於時而學者蓋鮮

近數年來採用泰西教育家之言而增體操一科於學校所謂兵式體操者爲軍事之豫備者也先之以普通體操又先之以遊戲視其年齡而調劑之而參以隨意運動如蹴鞠競走之類務求有以養軍人之資格而仍不肯於衛生之規則於是體育之義始得與智育德育並峙也

在昔 in ancient times. 士皆習射 every scholar was an archman. 上之人 those in authority. 居則爲卿相 were ministers of states in times of peace. 出則爲將帥 and commanders of armies in times of war. 國門之關 the bolt of the National Gate. 墨子百舍重繭以救宋 Meutze was able to cover hundreds of miles on foot to come to the rescue of the state of Sung (舍 lit. means station. At that time there was one station at every hundred li. 重繭 lit. the skin becomes so callous as to look like cocoons.) 學者之注意體育由來久矣 from time immemorial Chinese students had paid close attention to the development of healthy bodies. 戰國 the Warring States. 募兵而練之 enlisted soldiers and drilled them. 於是 since then. 軍人自成一社會 soldiers have formed a separate caste. 士農工商 scholars, husbandmen, mechanics, and merchants no longer share the duties of a soldier. 自是以降 from that time on. 士氣益衰 the spirit of the educated has gone on waning. 非文雅風流 they are either too pedantic. 卽行步規矩 or too obstinate. 而勇敢活潑之風渺矣 enterprising and military spirit being entirely a thing of the past. 於山野之間 in the country where they live. 採用泰西教育家之言 having taken the advices of the educationists of the West. 而增體操一科於學校 gymnastics has been added to the curriculum. 所謂兵式體操者 what is known as the military drill. 爲軍事之豫備者也 prepares a young man for the army. 先之 but is preceded by. 遊戲 athletic sports. 視其年齡而調劑之 such as are adapted to the age of the students concerned. 運動 exercisec. 如蹴鞠競走之類 such as dancing and running. 衛生之規則 rules of health. 於是體育之義始得與智育德育並峙 thus physical development for the first time resumes its rank with moral and intellectual developments.

## 第四十六課 說劍

鈞是鐵也或爲劍或爲百器爲劍則舉世重之其稱爲良劍者至闕千載而長存或雖滅矣而其名見於傳記千將莫邪舉世道之至於今不衰其爲百器非無益民生日用而被寶重享大名則莫能望劍之萬一器而有知必謂劍曰子與我種同也而子榮名昭著若此幸莫大焉彼爲劍者必不肯受將應之曰吾所以成此名者非徒爾也方余在冶烈火鑠之大鎚鍛之一日百折一折千鍛如此者殆且百日矣吾受勞受苦亦已至矣子欲得吾之榮必先受吾之勞欲享吾之名必先嘗吾之苦以是言之吾未爲幸而子亦未爲不幸也

嗚呼聖賢君子耳目口鼻與衆無異也然聖賢君子身雖沒而名不朽逾遠而彌存者豈非以終日乾乾自疆不息崇德廣業未嘗逸豫耶彼衆人之與草木同腐者豈其才之罪哉抑亦所以自處者不以其道耳

說劍 the sword. 則舉世重之 it is highly prized by man. 干將莫邪舉世道之至於今不衰 the Kan Tsang and Muk Ya are just as much praised now as they were when they existed. 其爲百器非無益民生日用 when iron is made into implements, it is still very useful in our every day life. 而被寶重享大名則莫能望劍之萬一 but it does not enjoy a thousandth part of the renown and value a sword possesses. 必不肯受 would never agree. 方余在冶 when I was in the iron-foundry. 烈火鑠之 I was melted by consuming heat. 大鏈鍛之 and pounded upon with heavy hammers. 一日百折 I was broken a hundred times a day. 一折千鍛 and once broken hammered a thousand times. 吾未爲幸 it is no good luck on my part. 子亦未爲不幸也 nor is it any more bad luck on yours. 聖賢君子 sages and great men. 耳目口鼻與衆無異 are every bit human that is they have ears, eyes, mouths, noses, etc., same as the rest of us. 身雖沒而名不朽 their bodies die but their fame continues to live. 逾遠而彌存者 the longer are the ages the more ineffaceable is their memory. 豈非以終日乾乾自疆不息 is it not due to the fact that they were God fearing and self-made men. 崇德廣業未嘗逸豫 never resting for a moment but continuously perfecting and improving themselves. 豈其才之罪哉 is it the lack of abilities that is to blame? 抑亦所以自處者不得其道耳 or is it rather the result of their failure to live a worthy life?

## 第四十七課 周亞夫

漢文帝時匈奴大入邊以宗正劉禮爲將軍軍霸上祝茲侯徐厲爲將軍軍棘門以河內守周亞夫爲將軍軍細柳以備胡上自勞軍至霸上及棘門軍直馳入將以下騎送迎已而之細柳軍軍士吏被甲銳兵刃彀弓弩持滿天子先驅至不得入先驅曰天子且至軍門都尉曰軍中聞將軍之令不聞天子之詔有頃上至又不得入於是上使使持節詔將軍曰吾欲勞軍亞夫乃傳言開壁門門壁軍士請車騎曰將軍約軍中不得驅馳於是天子迺按轡徐行至營將軍亞夫持兵揖曰介冑之士不拜請以軍禮見天子爲動改容式車使人稱謝皇帝敬勞將軍成禮而去旣出軍門羣臣皆驚文帝曰嗟乎此真將軍矣鄉者霸上棘門如兒戲耳其將固可襲而虜也至於亞夫可得而犯耶稱善者久之月餘三軍皆罷迺拜亞夫爲中尉



匈奴大入邊 the Hsung Nu made constant raids upon the Chinese frontier. 宗正劉禮 Liu Li, Secretary of the Clan Court. 祝茲侯 Marquis of Chu Chü. 河內守 Governor of Ho-nei. 以備胡 to provide against the Huns. 勞軍 to inspect the garrisons. 直馳入 he drove right into the barracks. 將以下 the commanders and lesser officers. 軍士吏 soldiers. 被甲 to be clad in armours. 銳兵刃 彀弓矢 with their weapons shining and arrows in their quivers. 天子且至軍門 His Majesty is due here presently. 先驅 the Imperial Bodyguard. 都尉 the lieutenant. 持節 with the imperial scepter. 壁門軍士 the sentry. 車騎 the Emperor's horsemen. 將軍約 by a military order of our General. 軍中不得驅馳 no galloping is allowed within this encampment. 於是天子迺按轡徐行 thereupon the Emperor drew his reins and went slowly on. 亞夫持兵揖 Ya Fu with his sword in hand made a bow to the Emperor. 介冑之士不拜 as a soldier in arms is not required to kneel down. 請以軍禮見 may I be permitted to present myself before your majesty with a military salute? 改容式車 and solemnly returned the salute by resting his arms on the stretcher of his carriage. 成禮而去 after the inspection, the Imperial party took its departure. 既出軍門羣臣皆驚 as soon as they were outside of the gate, the courtiers made no further attempt to conceal their astonishment. 如兒戲耳 but a child's play. 其將固可襲而虜也 it will be no surprise to me to hear at any time that the generals there have been taken by surprise. 至於亞夫 as to Ya Fu. 可得而犯耶 who ventures to storm his position? 中尉 field-marshal.

## 第四十八課 明末流寇

明之末葉賦重民貧流寇四起而李自成張獻忠最著

李自成米脂人自稱闖將爲總督陳奇瑜所破自成遁入車箱峽峽四山巉立中亙四十里易入難出賊誤入其中山上居民用石塞其路口賊無所得食自成僞請降奇瑜許之既出峽即大譟屠所過七州縣皆殘之後爲官軍圍之魚復山中自成大困欲自經會圍者懈自成乃由郟均走河南河南亂民歸之者十餘萬自是不可制崇禎十七年自成據西安改元永昌陷太原遂犯京師懷宗縊自成卽帝位明山海關守將吳三桂出降於清引清兵入關大破自成兵自成奔山西後至襄陽入九宮山爲村民所擊中腦死張獻忠膚施人初爲寇降於熊文燦居穀城擁兵索餉不奉調遣人皆知其必叛文燦不省崇禎十七年獻忠果陷武昌沉楚王華奎於江後自荊州入蜀陷成都蜀王至澍死之自號大西國王遣諸將分屠各府州縣將卒以殺人多少敘功川中人迹殆絕迨清兵至獻忠中矢墜馬伏積薪下牽出斬之

流寇 bandits. 明之末葉 during the closing days of the Mings. 賦重民貧 the people was impoverished by excessive taxation. 而李自成張獻忠最著 Li Chu-Chen and Chang Hsien-Chung being the most notorious. 峽四山峻立 this chasm enclosed by steep mountains. 易入難出 there was no retreat. 塞 to block. 自成僞請降 Chu Chen by way of a stragem asked permission to capitulate. 既出峽即大譟屠所過七州縣皆殘之 no sooner had the rebels been permitted to come out of the pass than they began to make an onslaught laying waste all the seven districts through which they passed. 欲自經 was about to hang himself. 會圍者懈 through some remise on the part of the besieging army. 河南飢民歸之者十餘萬 hundreds of thousands of the hunger-stricken inhabitants of Honan joined his standard. 自是不可制 and it was no longer possible for the imperial army to check his advance. 改元 to assume a dynastic title. 陷太原 upon the fall of Taiyuen 大破 to rout. 寇 a highway robber. 索餉 he made the government feed his men. 不奉調遣 but refused to obey orders. 人皆知其必叛 every silent observer knew that he was only waiting for an opportunity to raise the standard of rebellion. 將卒以殺人多少叙功 records of merits were based upon the number of persons murdered. 川中人迹殆絕 almost the entire province of Szechuen was depopulated. 伏積薪下 he concealed himself under a pile of fuel. 斬 to behead.

## 第四十九課 論葬

司馬光曰昔者吾諸祖之葬也家甚貧不能舉棺槨自吾父而下始有棺槨然金銀珠玉之物未嘗錙銖入於壙中將葬吾父族人皆曰葬者家之大事奈何不詢陰陽吾兄伯康無如之何乃曰詢於陰陽則可矣顧安得良葬師族人曰近村有張生者良師也數縣皆用之兄乃召張生許以錢二萬張生野夫也世爲葬師爲野人葬所得不過千錢聞之大喜兄曰汝能用吾言吾畀爾葬不用吾言將求他師張生曰惟命於是兄自以己意處歲月日時及壙之深淺廣狹道路所從出皆取便於事者使張生以葬書緣飾之曰大吉以示族人族人皆悅無違異者今吾兄年七十有九以列卿致仕吾年六十有六忝備侍從宗族之從仕者二十有三人視他人之謹用葬書未必勝吾家也前年吾妻死棺成而殮裝辦而行壙成而葬未嘗以一言詢陰陽家迄今無他故欲知葬具之不必厚視吾祖欲知葬書之不足信視吾家

不能舉棺槨 could not afford to buy coffins. 未嘗以錙銖 not the least bit. 奈何不詢陰陽 how can we go on without consulting a geomancer. 良葬師 a good geomancer. 數縣皆用之 who is patronized by several districts. 世爲葬師 geomancy has been the calling of his family for generations. 汝能用吾言吾畀爾葬 if you will do my bidding, I will let you direct the interment. 惟命 it shall be done, sir. 於是兄自以己意處歲月日時及壙之深淺廣狹道路所從出皆取便於事者 then my elder brother proceeded to decide upon the date and hour of the interment, the depth and width of the vault, and the route to be taken, either according to his own wishes or with a view to facilitating those who were to take part in the funeral procession. 使張生以葬書緣飾之曰大吉 all these arrangements Mr. Chang was requested to verify by his books as "lucky." 無違異者 no dissenting voice was heard. 以列卿致仕 is one of the highest civil service officials on the retired list. 忝備侍從 and unworthy as I am, I am one of the under-secretaries. 從仕者 those who hold government positions. 他人之謹用葬書 any one who listens to the dictates of geomancy. 未必勝吾家也 I do not think this record of my family is ever surpassed by. 故欲知葬具之不必厚視吾祖欲知葬書之不可信視吾家 think of what my grandfather and his brothers did, and you will be convinced that there is absolutely no occasion for a costly funeral and if you would look at my family record you will have no doubt as to the absurdity of the Book of Interment.

## 第五十課 西門豹

西門豹爲鄴令時鄴有神巫與吏比歲斂民錢爲河伯娶婦小家女好者巫云是當爲河伯婦卽聘取洗沐爲治新緝綺縠之衣使居河上齋宮張絳帳帷具牛酒宴飲又爲嫁女牀席令女居其上浮之河中行數十里乃沒人家有好女者恐巫爲河伯娶婦多持女遠亡以故城中空無人鄴俗云不爲河伯娶婦水來漂溺人民西門豹聞之謂吏曰河伯娶婦時吾亦往送女至期西門豹往會之觀者三千人其巫老女子也年七十從女弟子十人立大巫旁西門豹曰呼河伯婦來視其好醜卽將女出豹視之顧謂巫曰是女不好煩大巫嫗爲入報河伯更求好女後日送之卽使卒共抱大巫投之河中有頃曰巫嫗何久也弟子趣之復以弟子一人投河中有頃復使一人趣之凡投三弟子西門豹曰巫女子也不能白事復投一吏於河中西門豹嚮河立待良久觀者皆驚恐西門豹欲使諸吏趣之皆叩頭破額血流地泣言知罪西門豹曰河伯留客久且罷去從是之後無敢復言爲河伯娶婦者

西門豹爲鄴令 during the regime of Sze Meng Po as magistrate of Yeh. 神巫 a witch. 真吏比 with whom the subordinates of his yamen were closely associated. 歲斂民錢 every year they collected money from the inhabitants. 爲河伯娶婦 and pretended to wed a girl to the River God. 小家女好者 any girl of low birth who was beautiful. 聘 to betroth. 爲治新繒綺縠之衣 and clad in garments of silk and crape. 齋宮 the Fasting Palace. 張絳帳帷 decorated with red curtains. 牀席 bed and bedding. 沒 to drown. 人家有好女者恐巫爲河伯娶婦多持女遠亡 many parents who had beautiful daughters chose to take them to distant lands lest the witch might make them "wives" of the River God. 城中空無人 consequently the city was deserted. 鄴俗云 the general belief of Yeh was. 漂 to carry away. 送女 to see the girl off. 會之 to witness the scene. 從女弟子十人 with a band of ten female disciples. 呼河伯婦來 call out the would-be bride of the River God. 視其好醜 let me see how she looks. 煩大巫嫗爲入報河伯更求好女 I should be pleased if you would go down into the river and inform its god that I will undertake to look for a prettier girl in his behalf. 白事 to deliver a message. 觀者皆驚恐 all the spectators were seized with terror. 泣言知罪 with tears in their eyes, they asked for forgiveness. 無敢復言爲河伯娶婦者 no one dared to circulate the old story of the alleged wedding of the River God.





## 第一課

## 漢口領事團佈告中立文

現值中國政府與中國民國軍決裂業已彼此接戰按國際公法之規定凡當此等時期即一國之政府與本國國民起有戰事時其居留該國之不論何國人民均應嚴守中立概不得干涉其內部事宜之操縱亦不得租匿兩造重要人物或與無論何造以極微之贊助據此本領事等特行布告嚴守中立並按租界章程兩造武裝兵士概不准出現於租界地點以內亦不得於租界內儲藏無論何種之軍需本領事等爲遵守國際法上需要條件及竭盡其維持睦誼之職務起見特行頒布本通告深望中國官場及各界人民隨時匡助庶幾中立可保而上述之目的亦可達到領事團幸甚中國幸甚

民國軍 Ming Kwoh Chuin; the Republican Army. 決裂 in conflict. 按國際公法之規定 it is provided by international law that. 當此等時期 in such a juncture. 居留 resident (*adj.*). 內部事宜之操縱 the control of internal affairs. 租匿 to harbour or conceal. 據此 in accordance with the above. 武裝兵士 armed soldiers. 軍需 munitions of war. 竭盡其維持睦誼之職務 to maintain the friendly relations which it is their duty to do to the fullest extent. 目的亦可達到 the end may be accomplished.

## 第二課

## 美國承認中華民國書

自中國國民起而引自治之事業爲己任收自治之權力爲己有以來我合衆國之政府與人民固已備表同情歷歷有據矣茲當貴國國會議員方會集以奉行其重大之職務時敝政府人民僉謂宜及此時機有所貢獻俾中國國民力求上理之志行卽因此而得一圓滿之歸宿本總統用特以敝國政府及人民之名義敬伸其歡迎之誠於新中國而攜手以入於世界之國羣抑本總統於實行承認之際實懷有一種之希望謂中國國民必能更進而求共和政體之美備俾國家得躋於興盛又安之最高度卽一切已定之義務爲前清政府所遞交於臨時政府者此後必更由臨時政府遞交於國會所立之新政府而爲新政府所恪守無渝也

引自治之事業爲己任收自治之權力爲己有 the assumption of the attributes and powers of self-government. 固已備表同情歷歷有據 having abundantly testified their sympathy with. 俾中國國民力求上理之志行，卽因此而得一圓滿之歸宿 to set the seal of full accomplishment upon these aspirations of the Chinese people. 世界之國羣 the family of nations. 興盛又安之最高度 the highest degree of development and well-being. 已定之義務 established obligations.

## 第三課

英國君主承認中國派駐新嘉坡領事敕書

英國大君主維多利亞仰承

帝眷爲大英及愛爾蘭合國之君主正教之保障茲

爲曉諭我忠愛人民事中國

國家頒發文憑一道派○○○爲駐紮新嘉坡領事官

本君主允○○○爲中國

國家之領事今特申諭新嘉坡人民遵照從此爾等應

接認○○○爲領事官並與以一切合法之贊助俾

得自由行使及享受其任內一切應有之權利及應

盡之職務

一千八百七十八年十二月二十一日日本君主在位

之第四十二年於聖乾姆宮頒發

奉君主諭樞密院員沙里斯白里

維多利亞 Victoria. 仰承帝眷 by the Grace of God. 大英及愛爾蘭  
合國之君主 Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland.  
正教之保障 Defender of the Faith. 接認 to receive. 並與以一切  
合法之贊助俾得自由行使及享受其任內一切應有之權利  
及應盡之職務 and to render him all lawful aid in his free exercise and  
enjoyment of all functions and privileges he is entitled to. 奉君主諭 by  
warrant under the Queen's sign manual. 樞密院員沙里斯白里 Salis-  
bury, the Privy Councillor.

## 第四課

## 民國三年內國公債條例

第一條 政府爲整理金融補助國庫起見募集公債以一千六百

萬元爲額定名曰民國三年內國公債

第二條 此項公債利率定爲按年六釐

第三條 此項公債以每年六月及十二月爲給付利息之期

第四條 此項公債三年以內祇付利息第四年起用抽籤法每年

償還債額總數九分之一至十二年爲止全數償清

前項抽籤於每年十二月十五日在北京執行之

第五條 此項公債應付息銀先由財政部交通部籌足一年利息

九十六萬元撥交公債局指定之外國銀行永遠存儲作

爲保息此外仍由財政部交通部按月另指的款八萬元

撥交指定之外國銀行存儲以備每屆付息之用

整理金融補助國庫 to adjust the financial conditions and increase the funds of the National Treasury. 募集公債 issue this loan. 額 the authorized amount. 內國公債 the National Loan. 利率 rate of interest. 抽籤法 the drawing of bonds. 償還 to redeem. 執行 to take place. 財政部 Ministry of Finance. 交通部 Ministry of Communications. 籌足 to raise the full amount of. 撥交 to hand it over to. 公債局 Bureau of Public Loans. 指定 to designate. 保息 a guarantee for the interest. 的款 a definite fund. 存儲 to deposit with. 以備 for the purpose of.

## 第五課

## 民國三年內國公債條例

## 第六條

前項的款每月由交通部鐵路餘利除業經抵押外撥五萬元左右翼商稅撥三萬元

此項公債應付本銀指定京漢鐵路第四次抵押所餘之每年二百八十萬元內支付於第四年起按第五條撥存辦法辦理

## 第七條

此項公債償本付息由中國交通總分行暨政府委託之外國銀行中國殷實銀號或海關稅務司署支付

## 第八條

此項公債分期募集其第一期購票者於應付利息之外加獎一年之息即每票百元加獎六元第二期購票者預付一年之息在第二期後購票者不在此限至應分若干期募訖由公債局酌量情形定之

## 第九條

此項公債每百元實收九十四元

## 第十條

此項公債票面概不記名其有請求記名者亦准照辦

## 第十一條

公債票額定為五種如左

- (一)一萬元 (二)一千元 (三)一百元 (四)五十元  
(五)十元

餘利 the surplus income. 除業經抵押外 after meeting previous charges. 左右翼商稅 Traffic Revenue of the Left and Right Wing. 按第五條撥存辦法辦理 shall be appropriated and deposited, in the manner described in Art. 5 above. 分期募集 to issue in series. 購票者 subscriber. 加獎 in addition to the regular interest; a premium of-預 in advance. 酌量情形 to exercise one's discretion; according to circumstances. 每百元實收九十四元 issued at 94% of the face value. 記名 to affix one's name on the Bond. 概不記名 shall be Bearer Bonds. 五種 five denominations.

## 第六課

## 民國三年內國公債條例

## 第十二條

此項公債之債票及息票得自償本付息到期之日起用以完納一切租稅及代其他種種現款之用

## 第十三條

此項公債得爲銀行之保證準備金

## 第十四條

此項公債得隨意買賣抵押其他公務上須交納保證金時得作爲擔保品

## 第十五條

經理此項債票之官吏人民對於此項債票如有損毀信用之行爲照違反命令法懲罰處以一年半以下之有期徒刑二百元以下之罰金

## 第十六條

每屆還本付息十五日以前由財政部交通部會同呈請大總統特派肅政史二員審計院審計官二員前往公債局及中國交通兩行稽查此項債款賬目並檢驗還本付息之款每屆還本抽籤之時亦由肅政史暨審計院審計官會同財政交通兩部長官監視一切

息票 coupon 用以完納一切租稅 utilized as cash in payment of Government taxes and duties. 銀行之保證準備金 guarantee fund or reserve of banks. 抵押 to mortgage. 公務上須交納保證金時 where a guarantee fund is required in the public service. 擔保品 security. 有損毀信用之行爲 by any action injure the credit of the Bonds. 違反命令法 Law relating to the Violation of Orders. 一年半以下之有期徒刑 a punishment of imprisonment for a period not over one year and half. 會同 jointly 肅政史 Censor. 審計院審計官 Auditors of the Audit Department. 稽查; 檢驗 to inspect. 監視 to superintend.

## 第七課

## 內國公債局章程

第一條 政府爲籌募內國公債起見設立內國公債局辦理籌募

## 內國公債事務

第二條 本局派董事十六人華洋員參用由董事中推選總理一

## 員協理四員常川到局辦事

第三條 本局董事以下列各員組織之

一 財政部員一員 二 交通部員一員 三 稅務處派稅務司

洋員二人 四 中國銀行總裁 五 交通銀行總理 六 中法銀

行經理洋員一人 七 保商銀行經理洋員一人 八 華商殷

實銀錢行號經理三員 九 購票最多者六人 (此六人之額

華人最少應占半數) 上列董事各員係以個人資格充任之

第四條 本局辦事員由總協理派委無定額

第五條 本局董事應組織董事會議局務其會議日期另定之

第六條 本局總理綜攬募債一切事宜協理贊襄總理分擔募債

## 事宜

第七條 本局董事除於董事會列席會議局務外並有稽查賬目

及檢驗還付本息存款之責

董事 Director. 華洋員參用 consisting of both Chinese and Foreigners. 推選 elect. 總理 Chairman. 協理 vice-chairman. 常川 regularly. 下列各員 the following personnel. 總裁 Director-General. 中法銀行 Banque Industrielle de Chine. 保商銀行 the Commercial Guarantee Bank of Chili. 購票最多者 the holders of the largest number of the Bonds. 以個人資格充任 to hold their positions in their personal capacity. 辦事員 the members on the staff. 董事會 Board of Directors. 綜攬 control. 列席會議局務 to attend the meetings to participate in the discussion of the business of the Bureau. 還付本息存款 the sinking-fund

## 第八課

第八條 本局辦事各員稟承總協理治事其辦事細則另定之

第九條 本局聯絡國內中外各銀行及資本家以包賣及其他方法銷售債票

上項承包銀行及資本家本局得予以百分之六以內之經手佣費

第十條 本局發行債票時得酌量情形委託中國交通總分各行聯合交易所代賣債票

第十一條 經售債票之人倘募有巨款成績顯著得由財政部呈請大總統統給予相當之獎章以資鼓勵

第十二條 本局所有應行規定募集發行暨償本付息以及登記賬目各詳細章程應按照公債條例隨時擬訂報部核奪

第十三條 本章程以呈奉大總統批准之日爲施行之期

第十四條 本章程所有未盡事宜隨時增改呈請大總統批准施行



稟承 under the direction of. 聯絡  
to co-operate with; to keep in touch  
with. 資本家 capitalist. 以包賣及其他  
方法 through contracting agents and or  
by other means. 經手佣費 commission.  
交易所 the Stock Exchanges. 募有巨款  
成蹟昭著 succeeded in effecting the  
subscription of a very large number of  
the Bonds. 給予相當之獎章以資鼓勵 to  
award suitable medals by way of en-  
couragement and appreciation of such  
meritorious service. 報部核奪 submit  
to the Minister of Finance for approval.  
批准 sanction. 施行 enforce.

## 第九課

## 美孚合資公司合同

茲因中國陝西省內延長縣及他處有石油出產又因該石油之性質區域及所值若何未盡明瞭又因美孚於石油事業最有經驗且具有能力凡探查製煉銷售等事均較他公司獨為優勝是以雙方訂定條款如左

## 第一條

美孚允派得力之技師一人或數人立即前往陝西省延安府直隸省承德府及兩處附連地方產油場所詳細探查中國政府允派應用謹導繙譯及足敷保衛之軍隊所有費用由中國政府及美孚分付

## 第二條

一俟探查完竣或在探查期內據技師之意見謂所得調查憑證確足顯明延安府延長縣或承德府油場如果開採雙方可以獲利則中國股東及美國股東即應組織一中美合資公司此公司應在美國領照並在中國註冊於探查完竣後六個月內從事開採

## 第三條

公司股份美孚佔百分之五十五中國政府佔百分之三十七有半此百分之三十七有半係由公司奉繳於中國政府作為准其開採之報效金其餘七分半任憑中國政府於公司成立之日起兩年內照票面價格購買如過期不買仍作為美孚之股本此合同期內所有中國股本不得售與非中國人或為非中國人所有

將來在第一第二第四條所開各油場內須加增資本亦照上列之比例及規則辦理公司之完全管理及經辦權應授於董事部以美孚人員及中國人員按照股本多寡平均分配組織之一俟本合同簽字後即由中國政府之代表與美孚之代表會定公司名稱及其規則章程中國國民可在市面購買中美公司之股票

美孚公司 the Standard Oil Company. 延長縣 Yen Ch'ang Hsien. 石油 petroleum. 性質 nature 區域 extent. 所值 value. 探查 to exploit. 雙方 the contracting parties. 得力之技師 competent expert. 延安府 Yen-an-fu. 承德府 Chengteh-fu. 附連地方 adjoining fields. 護導 escort. 足敷保衛之軍隊 military sufficient to insure the safety of the expedition. 分任 to be borne jointly. 調查憑證 data. 中美合資公司 American-Chinese Corporation. 領照 to be chartered. 註冊 to register. 作為准其開採之報效金 in repayment for the Franchise. 照票面價格購買 to purchase at par. 完全管理及經辦權 the absolute and entire control and management. 董事部 Board of Directors. 按照股本多寡平均分配組織之 to be consisted of.....in the proportions of the above allotment of shares.

## 第十課

## 第四條

中國政府允美孚將陝西省延安府延長縣直隸省承德府及其附連產油場所全行交與中美合資公司開採製煉及銷售中國政府允極力相助並加以保護並無任何項外國人不給以產油場所專利之權並允中國境內無論何項產油場所概不讓與其他外國人辦理以俟中美合資公司開辦有效藉滿中國政府及美孚之意惟此項期限不得逾一年以本合同簽押之日起算本合同自簽字之日起實行六十年為滿在此期內中國政府允不令其他外國人或外國團體在上開地方採取石油或其副產物倘陝西延安府延長縣直隸省承德府及其附連油場勘得無開採之價值本合同應適用於直隸兩省內之別處地方仍以技師探查所指為限

## 第五條

中國政府允凡中美合資公司所出石油及其副產物由產油場所運至水道時之需要通運物如鐵路或管綫等均許為中美合資公司所有中美合資公司為利益本公司起見應建築保養及使用此種路線惟開造之先須呈請交通部允准

## 第六條

中國允與各地業主或租戶或現在上述各地方開採石油之人議定辦法將所有產油場所悉歸該公司一家開採所有關於讓地之一切費用應由中國政府商訂由公司支給所產粗油按一百分之十五分報效中國政府在產油場所交納

## 第七條

此合同所開各條款應俟美孚所派之技師探查報告經美孚認可始行有效

## 第八條

如中國政府欲在美國辦理借款美孚公司許以默為贊助

## 第九條

此合同繕具漢文英文各四分如有疑義以英文為準

全行交與 exclusively entrusted to.  
開採 to develop. 製煉 to refine. 專利之權  
monopoly. 在此期內 during which term.  
外國人或他國團體 foreign individual or  
corporation. 副產物 products. 應適用於  
shall apply to. 需要通運物 all necess-  
ary facilities of transportation. 管線  
pipelines. 建築保養及使用 to construct,  
maintain and operate. 業主 landowner.  
租戶 lessor of land. 議定辦法 to arrange.  
關於讓地 in connection with vacating of  
any lands. 粗油 crude petroleum. 報效  
royalty. 默為贊助 to give its tacit sup-  
port. 疑義 dispute. 以英文為準 English  
version shall be considered binding.

## 第十一課

清皇族頌孫文黃興詞

語有之非常之人始能建非常之業斯言也乃於

中山  
克強 兩先生暨諸傑士見之

兩先生洞觀四千餘年之歷史二十世紀之時艱非以其和定國體不能爲人民謀幸福不能與列強談競爭於是遍游歐美參以時機數十年苦口熱心始達共和目的方諸華盛頓何多讓焉此固見

兩先生有志竟成亦由我

皇太后及

皇上大公無私之心遂以天下之神器舉而還之天下不圖唐虞揖讓休風復見於今日也獨是建

設以來內憂外患險象環生大陸風雲更亟於

兩先生未創共和偉論以前然則時勢造英雄耶抑英雄造時勢耶今

兩先生翩然北上北方人士爭以望見顏色爲榮且與

大總統握手言歡論道經邦一堂抵掌本爵現因小恙未能親接鴻言心殊抱歉深願海內昇平之治將於

兩先生倚之賴之正不僅我皇室享優待之榮也非常之人非常之業惟於

兩先生是望

清皇族代表醇親王遺倫貝子代讀

頌詞 an address. 洞觀 well conversant with. 方諸華盛頓何多讓焉 they may indeed be compared to the illustrious Washington of the West. 有志竟成 "There is a will, there is a way." 大公無私之心 the unselfishness and democratic spirit. 內憂外患 internal trouble and external dangers. 時勢造英雄 circumstances create heroes. 英雄造時勢 heroes create circumstances. 深願海內昇平之治將於兩先生倚之賴之正不僅我皇室享優待之榮也 it is my wish that through the help and guidance of Dr. Sun and Gen. Huang not only the Imperial family will forever enjoy the Favorable Treatment granted to us by the Republic, but also the whole nation will know peace and prosperity. 醇親王 the Ex-Prince Regent. 倫貝子 Prince Pa Lun.

## 第十二課

## 日本天皇賀袁總統當選書

袁總統閣下接展布告敬稔 閣下已被公舉爲中  
 華民國大總統 上選榮膺合亟馳賀 貴國由  
 臨時政府時代而進於正式政府 國基永定胥  
 於此舉乎卜之此敝國所以聞 閣下之當選而  
 尤爲欣慰也 中華民國前途旣得人如 閣下  
 敢不飭敝政府 立伸其完全及正式之承認向  
 來中日邦交極爲親厚此次提前承認尤所以表  
 敝國親善之心有加無已也 民國肇端方興未  
 艾敬祝 中華民國康寧並祝 貴大總統萬福

日本天皇 The Emperor of Japan; the Mikado. 閣下 Your Excellency. 布告 announcement. 上選榮膺 on your high preferment. 臨時政府時代 the provisional regime. 正式政府 permanent government. 胥於此舉乎卜之 to regard the event as the sufficient indication of. 前途 destinies. 此次提前承認 this early act of recognition. 親善之心 sympathy and good-will. 民國肇端方興未艾 the Republic of China so auspiciously inaugurated. 萬福 a full measure of health and happiness.



## 第十三課

某公使照會外部上海○國商人承辦牲畜稅  
釐合同核與現行條約不合請飭華官速予作  
廢文

爲照會事茲據各國駐北京公使聲稱頃聞上海有○  
商○公司其代表人名○○○○業與上海華官議妥  
由該商包收上海進口牲畜稅釐嗣後商人販運牲畜  
到滬倘無該公司執照一律不准進口違者充公等語  
查似此辦法顯係結行包攬自便其非法征收之計與  
約章不符爲此據情照請

貴部迅速飭令上海官場按照現行約章并查照一千  
八百四十四年中法條約第九條所載將○公司所訂  
包收牲畜釐稅合同速予作廢可也須至照會者

某商某公司 a certain.....concern. 代表 representative. 上  
海進口牲畜稅釐 the likin tax to be collected on cattle imported into  
Shanghai. 違者充公 under the penalty of confiscation. 似此辦法顯  
係結行包攬自便其非法征收之計 such an arrangement virtually  
amounts to a monopoly with facilities for illegitimate extortion. 與約  
章不符 in conflict with treaty provisions. 合同 a contract. 作廢 to  
terminate. 一千八百四十四年中法條約第九條所載 Art. IX  
of the Franco-Chinese Treaty of 1844.

## 第十四課

外部照會○使○國無綫電會俟第二次開會再行核辦文

爲照覆事前准

貴公使照稱奉本國外部訓令現擬定於本年○月○日在○○擬開會議預備萬國商定無綫電章程請貴國政府派員赴會並將章程草稿附送察閱等因當經本部咨行○○部去後茲准咨覆稱議擬萬國無綫電報章程如果派員必須熟悉此項無綫電學之人華員中尙無是選從前歐洲各京屢開萬國陸綫電報公會向未派員前往此次似可不必與議現在會期迫促此次擬暫不派員俟其初議章程宣布後較有端緒可尋將來二次開會中國電學程度漸高再行核辦等語相應照覆

貴公使查照轉達

貴國外部可也須至照會者

訓令 instructions. 萬國 international. 無線電 wireless telegraphy 章程草稿 a draft of the regulations. 熟悉 conversant with. 華員中尙無是選 there is none among the Chinese staff who possesses the necessary qualifications. 此次似可不必與議 it would seem unnecessary for us to take part in the conference now. 現在會期迫促 as the time before conference is very limited. 俟其初議章程宣佈後較有端緒可尋 after the promulgation of such regulations as may be adopted by the First Conference, the question will be more apprehensible. 將來二次開會中國電學程度漸高再行核辦 we will consider the question of sending delegates when the second International Conference takes place and, by that time, it is hoped, further progress in telegraphy will have been achieved by China.

## 第十五課

## 袁總統制定官吏違令懲罰條例申令

發布政令權在政府服從政令義在國民而宣化承流負有奉行政令之責任者厥惟官吏蓋政令之所自出固爲國家喉舌之司實爲人民耳目之寄地方官吏苟能奉公守法身體力行斯草偃風從自收令出惟行之效乃自改革以來紀綱陵替法守蕩然甚或自便私圖弁髦命令專擅固爲瀆職敷衍亦足害公官吏無率循軌道之方針則人民更無所措其手足本大總統躬承重寄責有專歸當茲國基甫定萬端待理之時加以友邦失和動關全局凡內治外交各政策幾經計畫而見諸施行者既已著爲令甲宣布通行各該官吏自應協力同心一體遵守官常既肅民意乃孚茲特制定官吏違令懲罰令凡我僚屬務各尊重法令共濟時艱不得陽奉陰違以身試法本大總統爲整一法規刷新政治起見自此令公布後凡中外文武各官吏如有違反命令情事惟有執罰以繩其後至此外或妨害國交或構成外患以及官吏瀆職等罪刑律各有專條仍應按律處斷以肅官方總之當國家危急存亡之秋正有司憂勤惕厲之日各該官吏尙其遵依法令切實進行毋再玩愒因循致罹罰譴凡百有司其各懷之此令

發布政令 to promulgate administrative mandates.  
 權 authority. 義 obligation. 宣化承流 mediums  
 through which the mandates of administration flow.  
 責任 duty. \*喉舌之司 mouth-piece. 自收令出惟  
 行之效 the result will be that every order be effectively  
 enforced. 紀綱陵替法守蕩然 laxity of principle  
 has set in, and law and discipline have not been  
 respected. 弁髦命令 to set at naught the mandates.  
 專擅 to act presumptuously. 敷衍 to perform one's  
 duty negligently. 率循軌道之方針 fixed principle  
 to be followed. 措其手足 to know one's position. 動  
 關全局 a little move will involve the whole situation.  
 協力同心一體遵守 to observe with one accord.  
 官常 official discipline. 陽奉陰違 to break secretly  
 while pretending to have obeyed in public. 以身試  
 法 to defy the law. 刑律各有專條 there are special  
 criminal laws against them. 總之 In fine. 當國家  
 危急存亡之秋 at this critical juncture. 懷之 to  
 take note of the above.

## 第十六課

## 英皇愛德華第七駕崩唁言

嗚呼二十世紀以來世界之風雲亟矣六七強國之君主各挾其對外之政策爭雄長於全球而英皇愛德華第七卽位後雖亦雄心勃勃以擴張商業勢力爲己任然其所挾之政策則恆注意於世界之和平以故主張激烈派之君主縱欲大張其高掌遠蹠之志而卒不能逕行其政策者亦英皇之政策有以牽掣之而不盡美總統提倡和平之功也每讀西報記英皇演說對華問題未嘗不以敦崇中英兩國睦誼爲言而殷殷焉希望中國之強盛憲政之進步卽此一端已足令我國之人民感念不置今者天禍英國喪此賢主其國中之人民歎傷悲悼不言可想卽鄰國之與英友善者亦必怏怏不樂表其情感（下略）

英皇愛德華第七駕崩唁言 A Tribute to the  
Late King Edward VII. 二十世紀以來 since the  
advent of the twentieth century. 各挾其對外之政  
策爭雄長於全球 to utilize their diplomatic policy  
to struggle for supremacy on the face of the globe.  
以擴張商業勢力爲己任 to take it upon himself  
to extend commercial interests. 主張激烈派之君  
主 those sovereigns with more violent aspirations.  
高掌遠蹠之志 high-handed and broad-paced desires.  
牽掣 to hamper. 提倡和平 to advocate peace. 敦  
崇中英兩國睦誼 to cement the friendly relations  
between Britain and China. 殷殷焉希望 fervently  
hoped for. 天禍英國 Heaven besets England  
with calamity. 快快不樂表其情感 to feel unhappy  
and express their emotions.

## 第十七課

○使照會外部上海租界外編釘門牌係爲收取自來水費文

爲照覆事○月○號接准

貴部照稱據上海○電稱工部局在租界外寶山境內編釘門牌派捕收捐民衆憤怒若不亟行阻止必致生事云云

貴處并云工部局輒在租界以外派捕收捐經該員迭次照阻仍不中止恐將釀成暴動殊爲可慮請迅電上海○總領事轉飭工部局即將門牌巡捕一律撤回等因本公使當即電知上海○總領事并照抄來照行知去後茲據覆稱該工部局并未於租界以外勒捐惟因上海自來水公司前曾與工部局商定租界外如有購此水者必應酌量加價故各該處有產業之中國人均已願交水價僅有租戶人等不甚樂從其編釘門牌之事祇釘於用水之家便於查記如不願出價之家亦無人相強但不交水價不准飲用此水等情由此觀之上海○於○月○號所致

貴處之電似有誤會且該華官顯有干涉租界內不應與聞事件之意故本公使不能不謂該華官之舉動將損害租界內華洋居民現有之睦誼也本公使甚望立即訓令該華官以

貴部敦睦之心爲心可也爲此覆請

查照須至照會者



編釘門牌 the numbering of houses. 係爲 is for the purpose. 收取自來水費 collecting water rates. 民衆憤怒 to the indignation of the populace. 若不亟行阻止必致往事 and that disturbances are imminent unless further aggression is prevented. 迭次照阻 repeated protests. 恐將釀成暴動殊爲可慮 the situation is very critical as riots may break out at any moment. 撤回 to recall. 勒捐 to collect taxes or dues by force. 上海自來水公司 The Shanghai Water Works Co. 酌量加價 to pay a higher rate. 有產業之中國人 Chinese property owners. 僅有租戶人等不甚樂從 only the tenants do not like it. 其編釘門牌之事祇釘於用水之家便於查記如不願出價之家亦無人相強 so far as the numbering of houses goes, the number is placed only on those who use water and no coercion is ever applied toward any one who is unwilling to pay the rate. 但不交水價不准飲用此水 it being understood that no one could use the water unless he pays the rate, 且該華官顯有干涉租界內不應與聞事件之意本公司不能不謂該華官之舉動將損害租界以內華洋居民現有之睦誼也 I therefore, am obliged to regard the action of the....., as evidence of his desire to interfere with things in the Settlement, which really do not lie in his province, so as to endanger the good relations now existing between Chinese and foreigner residents in the Settlement.

## 第十八課

## 大總統局外中立申令

我國與各國均係友邦不幸奧塞失和此外歐洲各國亦多以兵戎相見深爲惋惜本大總統因各交戰國與我國締約通商和好無間此次戰事於遠東商務關係至鉅且因我國人民在歐洲各國境內居住經商及置有財產者素受各國保護并享有各種權利故本大總統欲維持遠東之和平與我國人民所享受之安寧幸福對於此次歐洲各國戰事決意嚴守中立用特宣布中立條規凡我國人民務當共體此意按照本國所有現行法令條約以及國際公法之大綱恪守中立義務各省將軍巡按使尤當督率所屬竭力奉行遵行國際之條規保守友邦之睦誼本大總統有厚望焉此令

各國 all Sovereign Powers and States. 不幸

與塞失和 a state of war unhappily exists between  
Austro-Hungary and Servia. 締約通商和好無間  
by faith of Treaties of Friendship and Commerce  
we are on terms of friendship and amicable inter-  
course with. 關係至鉅 seriously affect. 維持遠  
東之和平與我國人民所享受之安甯幸福 to  
maintain the peace of the Far East and preserve  
to our citizens the blessings of peace, which now  
they happily enjoy. 嚴守中立 to maintain a  
strict and impartial neutrality. 國際公法 the law  
of nations. 將軍 Military Governor. 巡按使  
Civil Governor. 所屬 subordinates. 國際之條規  
the precepts laid down in the International Law.

## 第十九課

## 局外中立條規

- 第一條 各交戰國在中國領土領海內不得有佔據及各交戰行為凡中國海陸各處均不得倚之為根據地以攻敵人
- 第二條 各交戰國之軍隊軍械及輜重品均不得由中國領土領海經過  
 其有違背前項規定者應聽中國官員卸去武裝並約束扣留至戰事完畢之時為止
- 第三條 各交戰國之軍艦及附屬各艦在中國領海內不應停泊之口岸經中國官員知照而不開行者中國得令其卸去武裝所有船員一並扣留至戰事完畢時為止
- 第四條 第二條及第三條所扣留之軍隊船員如乏衣食中國政府當量力供給俟戰事畢應由各交戰本國如數償還
- 第五條 凡各交戰國軍艦或附屬各艦在中國領海內得地方官允准停泊者其停泊時期不得逾二十四點鐘若遇風浪危險難以出洋或修理損傷未能完竣或購辦行船必需之糧食煤炭尚不足駛至該國最近口岸之數則聽中國海軍統將或地方官酌展期限一俟事畢當即退出
- 第六條 除因風浪險惡或損壞修理外各交戰國中一國軍艦或其附屬各艦停泊於中國一口岸或一港灣內者同時不得逾三艘以上
- 第七條 各交戰國之軍艦或附屬各艦若同在中國之一口岸內其後到之船應俟前船出口經二十四點鐘後奉有中國海軍統將或地方官之命令方准前往
- 第八條 各交戰國軍艦或附屬各艦在中國領海內添補一切需用之品不得逾平時所裝之數並不得增加其戰鬪力

交戰國 belligerent. 領土領海 the territory or the territorial waters. 交戰行爲 an act of war. 根據地 a base of operations. 軍械及輜重品 munitions of war or supplies. 卸去武裝 to disarm. 約束扣留 to hold in custody; to intern and detain. 附屬各艦 auxiliary vessels. 風浪危險 stress of weather. 糧食煤炭 food provisions and fuel. 酌展期限 to consider an extension of the time-limit. 港灣 roadstead. 同時 simultaneously; at the same time. 添補一切需用之品不得逾平時所裝之數 forbidden to re-victual their supplies above the peace standard. 增加其戰鬥力 to increase their fighting strength.

## 第二十課 續

## 第九條

各交戰國軍艦或附屬各艦不得在中國領海內緝捕商船並不得帶領所捕獲之船隻駛入中國口岸惟或因避風或修補損傷或購求行船必需之物件實出於萬不得已者不在此例一俟事畢當即退出且停泊之際不准使俘虜登岸及銷售所虜船隻及一切之物件

各交戰國軍艦或附屬各艦若不遵照上項辦理者中國得將被捕之船及俘虜釋放並將船員扣留船舶或物件一併充公各交戰國軍隊攜帶俘虜入中國領土或俘虜逃入中國領土內者中國亦即將該俘虜釋放一面扣留該軍隊

## 第十條

各交戰國軍艦專供考察學問及宗教或充慈善之舉者不適用第三第五第六第八等條之限制

## 第十一條

各交戰國在中國領土領海內不得編成戰鬥軍隊艦隊或設立募兵事務所不得設立捕獲審判所並不得封鎖中國口岸

## 第十二條

各國在北京使館衛隊及北京至山海關各國留駐兵隊係按前清光緒二十七年七月二十五日即西曆一千九百零一年九月初七日和約辦理現仍應遵守此約不得干涉此次變局之事此外留駐中國各處之兵隊亦照此辦理

如有不遵守前項之規定者中國得扣留該軍隊并卸去其武裝至戰事完畢之時為止

## 第十三條

中國人民寄居各交戰國境內者該國不得奪其資財不得勒充兵役在必要時中國得派軍艦前往保護或接載出口

## 第十四條

## 第十五條

## 第十六條

各交戰國有破壞  
中國之立條規  
者中國如以各  
方法阻止之時  
得視為啓釁之  
在中國領土領  
內中國人民均  
得往各交戰國  
當兵役或充當  
艦或附屬各艦  
水手并不得干  
戰事  
在中國領土領  
內人民不得為  
戰國治理武裝  
得供給船隻或  
料及一切軍需  
如彈丸火藥硝  
兵器等類以供  
交戰及緝捕之  
並不得供給款

所捕獲之船隻 a prize. 俘虜 prisoners of war  
釋放 release. 充公 confiscate. 專供 devoted exclusively  
to. 慈善 philanthropic. 不適用 not applicable to  
編成戰鬥軍隊艦隊 to form corps of combatants or  
equip fighting vessels. 募兵事務所 recruiting agencies.  
捕獲審判所 a prize court. 封鎖 set up a blockade of.  
和約 the Peace Protocol. 遵守 to conform to. 干涉  
to interfere with. 奪 to deprive of. 勒充兵役 to  
force one to enlist in military service. 啓釁之舉 a  
hostile act; an aggressive conduct. 干預戰事 to  
participate in the war. 彈丸火藥硝磺兵器等類  
shots and cartridges, gunpowder, saltpetre, arms, etc.

## 第二十一課 續

## 第十七條

在中國領土領海內人民不得爲各交戰國探報軍情及製作關係戰事之公文  
在中國領土領海內人民非經陸海軍統將或地方官允許不得售煤炭燃料糧食  
於各交戰國之軍隊及軍艦或附屬各艦

## 第十九條

在中國領土領海內人民非經地方官允許不得爲各交戰國修理或裝卸被獲船  
隻并不得購買交換受贈寄存該船隻及一切被獲物品

## 第二十條

凡中國船舶及船上人等對於各交戰國應遵守其實力封鎖之各口岸條規不得  
運送戰事禁制品或遞送軍務函件或代爲運輸物品及一切違犯戰時公法之舉  
動

## 第二十一條

凡在中國領土領海內人民有違犯中立條規者若係中國人按照法令懲治并將  
違犯之物品一律充公若係外國人即按照條約及國際公法辦理

## 第二十二條

中國人民有違犯戰時公法經交戰國捕獲者悉聽交戰國法庭按照公法處理如  
係交戰國之違法行爲應由該交戰國賠償損害

## 第二十三條

中國船隻所載中國軍器及一切戰時禁制品往來於中國各口岸及輸送其他中  
立國或由其他中立國輸入者各交戰國不得截留

中國船隻所載交戰國之尋常通商貨物及交戰國船隻所載中國一切貨物可以  
往來無阻

中國所發給之護照憑照各交戰國均應一律認准

## 第二十四條

本條規未盡事宜中國應遵照一千九百零七年各國在海牙所畫押之陸戰中立  
條約海戰中立條約辦理



探報軍情 to act as an spy, to carry on the work as  
an espionage. 裝卸 to load or unload. 購買交換受贈  
寄存該船隻及一切被獲物品 to purchase, exchange,  
accept as a gift or keep in custody the prize and all the  
belongings taken as prize. 實力封鎖 effectively  
blockaded. 戰事禁制品 contraband of war. 遞送  
軍務函件 to forward military despatches. 違法 illegal.  
賠償損害 to indemnify any loss or injury. 往來無  
阻 to pass to and fro without let or molestation. 護照  
憑照 passports and certificates. 認准 to recognize and  
give effect to. 未盡 not provided for. 陸戰中立條  
約 Convention respecting the Rights and Duties of  
Neutral Powers and Persons in case of War on Land.  
海戰中立條約 Convention concerning the Rights and  
Duties of Neutral Powers and Persons in Naval War.

第二十二課 上海道照會領事團處置工部局越界拘人辦法文

爲照復事照得工部局探捕越界拘人應訂處置辦法一事五月十一日接准復文多所辯論因有尙須改易之處而各領事所擬改者亦有未合公理茲再逐節答復如下

一第一節欲註明住居界外之華人與華人之在租界者涉訟須向公廨控訴不得逕赴地方官控告按諸以原就被用意相符惟來文但稱界外及租界外及租界并不聲明何者爲原告何者爲被告尙嫌含混應改爲華人與華人涉訟如被告向居租界之內者應由原告先自赴公廨控理如兩造中一有不服公廨判斷准赴上海道衙門上控由道另派他員復審如案情重大或竟由道親訊照此增列一條即作爲第一條因此條辦法本係上年與英總領事專案訂定自可添入

一第二節凡遇緊急事件不過知照地方官後即可往提并不等候查明情節在票上簽印云云尙如所言則慮凡非緊急事件皆可託詞緊急非特破壞定章徒成虛設且恐探捕藉此任意越界拘提實於治安之道大有妨礙自應如租界章程各屬差役至租界提人必須知照捕房簽字派探協提解解過堂訊明再予帶回者一律辦理仍以照前所擬爲是惟或報地方官或報警察總局并無定所似有未便現定改爲赴該管區內之警局呈報以昭妥洽如有關涉刑名要案并准探捕通融同往藉敦睦誼

一第二節原擬差役探捕不將差票呈報率至界外提人由警局拘拿此拘拿之辦法原於天津中英條約第九款英國民人至內地有不法情事可拘禁交送領事懲辦之意違章越界拘人即係非法拘拿實地方官照約應有之事且下文第四節違章者既須究懲設非立時拿住即逃脫之後又從何究懲前擬自未便更改

一第四節內緊接上文第二節而言爲辦法應有之義酌爲改妥  
以上各節現經本道復定改作五條均屬至當至公毫無偏倚合再逐條開單照復爲此照請  
貴領袖總領事轉致領事團一體飭遵仍望見復施行須至照會者

領事團 Consular body. 工部局探捕 Municipal Police. 辯論 arguments. 未合公理 not in accord with the principles of equity. 按諸以原就被用意相符 this requirement is quite in sympathy with the practice by which a plaintiff is obliged to sue a defendant in his (defendant's) own court. 兩造中 either party. 不服 not satisfied with. 判斷 judgment. 上控 to appeal. 他員 a deputy other than the Mixed Court magistrate. 復訊 to hear the appeal. 如案情重大 if the case is a more serious one. 專案 a certain case. 自可添入 there can be no objection to the amendment now. 倘如所言 should this ever become law. 則慮凡非緊急事件皆可託詞緊急 I am led to believe that the provision will be freely construed so as to include all cases where no urgency exists. 破壞定章 to the detriment of law. 實於治安之道大有妨礙 peace and good order will also be endangered. 過堂訊明 to hold a preliminary hearing. 仍以照前所擬爲是 the rule should stand as originally drawn up. 并無定所似有未便 it is conceded that so long as the place where a notice is due is open to question, considerable inconvenience may be encountered. 以昭妥洽 to meet this difficulty. 刑名要案 criminal cases. 藉敦睦誼 to further evince our friendly relations. 此拘拿辦法 this procedure. 原於天津中英條約第九款 is based upon the provision of Art. IX of the British Treaty of Tientsin. 前疑似未便更改 it is not considered advisable to make the change as suggested. 至當 equitable. 至公 just. 偏倚 partiality.

## 第二十二課

## 清帝宣布退位詔 第一道

朕欽奉隆裕皇太后懿旨前因民軍起事各省響應九夏沸騰生靈塗炭特命袁世凱遣員與民軍代表討論大局議開國會公決政體兩月以來尙無確當辦法南北睽隔彼此相持商輟於途士露於野徒以國體一日不決故民心一日不安今全國人民心理多傾向共和南中各省既創議於前北方諸將亦主張於後人心所向天命可知余亦何忍因一姓之尊榮拂兆民之好惡用是外觀大勢內審輿情特率皇帝將統治權公諸全國定爲共和立憲國體近慰海內厭亂望治之心遠協古聖天下爲公之義袁世凱前經資政院選舉爲總理大臣當茲新舊代謝之際宜有南北統一之方卽由袁世凱全權組織臨時共和政府與民軍協商統一辦法以期人民安堵海宇乂安仍合滿漢蒙回藏五族完全領土爲一大中華民國予與皇帝得以退處寬閑優游歲月長受國民之優禮親見郅治之告成豈不懿歟

退位 abdication; to abdicate. 九夏沸騰生靈塗炭 the whole country seethed in rising, and ruin was spelt on the people. 民軍代表 the Republican Representative; the Representative of the People's Army. 議開國會 to arrange for the holding of a National Convention. 確當辦法 definite mode of operation. 傾向 inclined in favor of; inclined favorably to. 天命可知 Heaven's ordinance may be divined. 好惡 tastes. 將統治權公諸全國 to bestow the jurisdiction of the country in common to the whole nation. 共和立憲國體 a Constitutional Republican Government. 古聖天下爲公之義 the principles of ancient sages that the country should be owned by the public. 資政院 the Senate. 總理大臣 Premier. 當茲新舊代謝之際 at this transitional period from the old order of things to the new. 退處寬閑優游歲月 to retire into leisure to live easily through the months and years. 優禮 the courteous treatment. 豈不懿歟 this would indeed be excellent!

## 第二十四課

## 清帝宣布退位詔 第二道

朕欽奉隆裕皇太后懿旨前以大局岌危兆民困苦特飭內閣與民軍商酌優待皇室各條件以期和平解決茲據覆奏民軍所開優待條件於宗廟陵寢永遠奉祀先皇陵制如舊妥修各節均已一律擔承皇帝但卸政權不廢尊號並議定優待皇室八條待遇皇族四條待遇滿蒙回藏七條覽奏尙爲周至特行宣示皇族暨滿蒙回藏人等此後務當化除畛域共保治安重觀世界之昇平胥享共和之幸福予實有厚望焉

〔甲〕關於大清皇帝辭位之後優待之條件

今因大清皇帝贊成共和國體中華民國於大清皇帝辭退之後優待條件如下

第一款 大清皇帝辭位之後尊號仍存不廢中華民國以待各外國君主之禮相待

第二款 大清皇帝辭位之後歲用四百萬兩俟改鑄新幣後改爲四百萬圓此款由中華民國撥用

第三款 大清皇帝辭位之後暫居宮禁日後移居頤和園侍衛人等照常留用

第四款 大清皇帝辭位之後其宗廟陵寢永遠奉祀由中華民國酌設衛兵妥慎保護

第五款 德宗崇陵未完工程如制妥修其奉安典禮仍如舊制所有實用經費均由中華民國支出

第六款 以前宮內所用各項執事人員可照常留用惟以後不得再招閱人

第七款 大清皇帝辭位之後其原有之私產由中華民國特別保護

第八款 原有之禁衛軍歸中華民國陸軍部編制額數俸餉仍如其舊

(乙)

關於清皇族待遇之條件

一 清王公世爵概仍其舊

二 清皇族對於中華民國國家之公權及私權與國民同等

三 清皇族私產一體保護

四 清皇族免當兵之義務

關於滿蒙回藏各族待遇之條件

今因滿蒙回藏各民族贊同共和中華民國所以待遇者如下

一 與漢人平等

二 保護其原有之私產

三 王公世爵概仍其舊

四 王公中有生計過艱者設法代籌生計

五 先籌八旗生計於未籌定之前八旗兵弁俸餉仍舊支放

六 從前營業居住等限制一律蠲除各州縣聽其自由入籍

七 滿蒙回藏原有之宗教聽其自由信仰

以上條件列於正式公文由兩方代表照會各國駐北京公使轉達各該政府

優待皇室 條件 the articles for the favourable treatment of the Imperial House. 和平解決 amicable settlement; a peaceful solution of the problem. 覆奏 to report. 宗廟 陵寢 永遠奉祀 the perpetual offering up of sacrifices at the Imperial Ancestral Temple and Mausolea. 先皇 靈寢 如舊 妥修 the continuance of the proper construction of the Mausoleum of the deceased Emperor Kuang Hsu. 尊號 Imperial prestige. 皇族 Imperial Clansmen. 尙爲 周至 fairly comprehensive and well-considered. 化除 畛域 to sink all differences. 以待 外國君主之禮 相待 to treat him with the same ceremonies accorded to a foreign sovereign. 歲用 annual allowance. 妥慎 保護 to protect effectually. 奉安 典禮 burial ceremony; funeral. 關入 軍 禁衛軍 Imperial Guards Corps. 額數 俸餉 number and pay. 世爵 hereditary nobles. 免當兵之義務 to be exempted from army service. 生計 means of livelihood. 八旗 the Eight Banners. 列於 正式公文 to be written in due form. 轉達 to transmit.

(丙)

## 第二十五課

## 清帝宣布退位詔 第三道

朕欽奉隆裕皇太后懿旨古之君天下者重在保全民命不忍以養人者害人現在新定國體無非欲先弭大亂期保乂安若拂逆多數之民心重啓無窮之戰禍則大局決裂殘殺相尋勢必演成種族之慘痛將至九廟震驚兆民荼毒後禍何忍復言兩害相形惟取其輕此正朝廷審時觀變痍瘵吾民之苦衷凡爾京內外臣民務當善體此意爲全局熟權利害勿得挾虛僞之意氣逞偏激之空言致國與民兩受其禍著民政部步軍統領姜桂題馮國璋等嚴密防範剴切開導俾皆曉然於朝廷應天順人大公無私之意至國家設官分職以爲民極內列閣府部院外建督撫司道所以康保羣黎非爲一人一家而設爾京外大小各官均宜概念時艱慎供職守應卽責成各長官敦切誠勸毋曠厥官用副予夙昔愛撫庶民之至意



重在保全民命 to lay emphasis on preserving the people's lives. 重啓無窮之戰禍 to recommence endless hostilities. 大局決裂殘殺相尋 the situation will be ruined and carnage and murder will ensue. 演成 to bring about. 九廟 the spirits of the Nine Imperial Ancestral Temples. 後禍 the resulting disasters. 此正朝廷審時觀變洞燭吾民之苦衷 and such is the Throne's sad inner motive to protect the people from utter ruin by examining the signs of the time and marking the changes. 爲全局熟權利害 to weigh well the pros and cons of the situation. 勿得挾虛矯之意氣逞偏激之空言 they should not hold vain and fanatic views and indulge in idle talks of violence and partiality. 步軍統領 the Commander of Gendarmerie of Peking. 開導 to enlighten. 所以康保羣黎 for the purpose of protecting and tranquillizing the people. 責成 to hold one responsible for.

## 第二十六課

## 袁總統蒞任宣言書

余不才忝居政界數十年向持穩健主義以爲立國大本在修明法度整飭紀綱而後應時勢之所宜合人羣而進化故歷辦革新諸政凡足以開風氣者必一一圖之但余取漸進而不取急進以國家人民之重未可作孤注之一擲而四千年先民之教澤尤不可使斲喪無餘也戊申以後歸田課耕不復與聞政事生平救國之志已如過眼煙雲乃武漢事起爲時勢所迫身當其衝大懼吾國吾民之無以生存而思減少其苦痛後清帝遜位共和告成以五大族之不棄推爲臨時大總統此種政體吾國四千年前已有雛形本無足異乃事權牽掣無可進行夙夜徬徨寤難安寢饋然且忍之又忍希望和平乃本年七月間少數暴民破壞統一傾覆國家此東亞初生之民國惴惴焉將不保余爲救國救民計不得已而用兵幸人心厭亂將士用命不及兩月內亂枚平極思解職歸田長享其和幸福而國民會議羣相推舉各友邦又以此余被選之日爲承認之期何敢高蹈鳴謙以致搖動國基負我父老子弟之期望蓋奈亦國民之一分子耿耿此心但知救國救民成敗利鈍不敢知勞逸毀譽不敢計是以勉就茲職今將以余極誠懇親愛之意與我國民一言之

西儒恆言立憲國重法律共和國重道德願道德爲體而法律爲用今將使吾民一躍而進爲共和國民不得不借法律以輔道德之用余歷訪法美各國學問家而得共和定義曰共和政體者採大衆意思制定完全法律而大衆嚴守之若法律外之自由則其恥之此種守法習慣必積久養成如起居之有時飲食之有節而後爲法治國吾國民性最馴惟薄於守法之習慣余望國民共守本國法律習之既久則道德日高而不自知矣

又共和國以人民爲主體人民大多數之公意在安居樂業改革以後人民受種種激刺言之慘然

余日望人民恢復元氣不敢行一擾民之政而無術以預防暴民致良民不免受其荼毒是余所引爲憾事者也余願極力設法使人民真享共和幸福以達於樂利主義之目的

國民生計日蹙迫於飢寒暴民之尤狡者利用此等貧民驅之死地可憫之至欲國之長治久安必使人人皆有生計而欲達此目的則必趨重於農工商余聞文明國頭等人物往往願爲實業家吾國天時地利不讓諸強徒以墾牧不講工藝不良礦產林漁業貨於地無憑貿易出口日減譬諸富人藏窖而日日憂貧余願全國人民注意實業以期利用厚生根本自固

蔭任宣言書 the Inauguration Speech. 不才 incompetent. 穩健 sound policy; firm and steady policy. 修明法度整飭紀綱 the clear definition and promulgation of legal systems and the establishment and maintenance of public order. 合人羣而進化 to keep pace with the world in the path of progress. 開風氣 to enlighten the people. 取漸進而不取急進 to prefer the more conservative rather than the extreme radical course. 未可作孤注之一擲 their fate should not be put to any risk. 教澤 teachings and traditions. 爲時勢所迫 forced by circumstances. 減少其苦痛 to mitigate their misery. 遜位 to abdicate. 雛形 embryo. 不得已而用兵 reluctantly resorted to arms. 國民會議 the National Assembly. 高蹈鳴謙 to show one's humbleness by setting a lofty ideal in refusing to accept the responsibility. 道德 morality. 體用 principle and application. 共和定義 the true definition of the word Republicanism. 駘 to abominate; to forsake. 守法習慣 law-abiding habit. 不自知 imperceptibly. 主體 principal. 恢復元氣 to recover their impaired energy; to restore the normal condition of the people. 暴民 the violent characters. 天時地利 the climate and natural resources. 不讓 by no means inferior to 日日憂貧 to complain all the time of poverty.

## 第二十七課 續

雖然實業之不發達厥有二因一在教育之幼稚一在資本之缺少無論何項實業皆與科學相關理化之不知汽電之不講人方以學戰以商戰我則墨守舊法迷信空談余願國民輸入外國文明教育即政治法律等學亦皆有實際而無空言余對於教育之觀念如是

實業非資本不辦以吾國地質之膏腴物力之豐富豈得爲貧人生所需不出衣食住之屬金錢其籌馬耳但金錢不足無以爲兌換之資缺少金錢猶缺少籌馬故欲備一切實業之開辦資本不得不仰諸富有籌馬之鄉鄰迨地利既闢無曠土無游民所借資本子母相生除償還本利外尚有贏餘比諸藏窖而憂貧者何如故願吾國輸入外國資本以振興本國實業

夫輸入外國文明與其資本是國家主義而實世界主義世界文明之極無非以己之有餘濟人之不足使社會各得其所幾無國界可言孔子喜言大同吾國現行共和則閉關時代之舊思想必當掃除淨絕凡我國民既守本國自定之法律尤須知萬國共同之法律與各國往來事文明對待萬不可有歧視外人之意見致生障礙而背公理邇來各國對我政策皆主和平中正遇事諸多贊助固徵世界之文明尤感友邦之睦誼凡我國民務當深明此義以開誠布公鞏固邦交爲重本大總統聲明所有前清政府及中華民國臨時政府與各外國政府所訂之正當契約亦當恪守又各外國人民在中國按國際契約及國內法律並各項成案成例已享之權利並特權豁免各事亦切實承認以聯交誼而保和平凡我國民當知此爲國際上當然之理蓋我有真心和好之證據乃能以禮往來也

余之所以告國民者此其大略也而又重言以申明者仍不外道德二字道德範圍廣大聖賢千萬語而不能盡其詞余所能領會者約言之則忠信篤敬而已

無論何項實業皆與科學相關 every branch of industry is in  
 close relation to science. 墨守舊法 to cleave conservatively  
 to the old system. 迷信空談 to have a superstitious faith  
 in empty talk. 人生所需不出衣食住之屬 the necessities of  
 life are but those things which are connected with clothes, food  
 and dwelling. 籌碼 a medium of exchange. 有餘 surplus.  
 不足 deficiency. 大同 cosmopolitanism; universalization.  
 閉關時代 the period of seclusion. 歧視 to discriminate  
 against. 開誠布公 to be sincere; with sincerity. 條約協約  
 公約 treaties, conventions and other engagements. 契約 con-  
 tract. 又各外國人民在中國按國際契約及國內法律並各項  
 成案成例已享之權利並特權豁免各事亦切實承認 and further  
 that all rights, privileges and immunities enjoyed by foreigners  
 in China by virtue of international engagements, national  
 enactments and established usages are hereby confirmed.  
 範圍廣大 most comprehensive. 聖賢千萬語而不能盡其詞  
 it has been even impossible for great sages to reveal their  
 whole significance by thousands and thousands of words.  
 領會 understand. 忠信篤敬 loyalty, faith, steadiness and  
 respectability.

第二十八課 續

忠之本義在於一國非忠於一人也。人人行國為本位，勿以一身一家為本位，乃能屈小己以利大。羣子云：「在無權不立文，務各以一人欺詐，行妨害國家之大局，而義務心出焉。是謂忠。」孔子不作誑語，吾國對內對義，近來人欺詐，不古習為壽，張立身且難，何況於市朝華盛頓幼時受其父教，即妄語為本國，故論對內對義，必當以信。惟恐或不害其進化之速也，吾國向以名教為大防，經四千年之文明，胎國變，自有天可磨滅者，存乃或本於理，想毀棄一切，不做實事，專說大話，未得外國之謂，長文，明國之所有，恆業而無責，徒為旁觀，時犯之亂，字無事，時犯一儉字，職業所在，惰氣乘之，何謂先恆本國之化，恆業而無責，徒為旁觀，時犯之亂，字無事，時犯一儉字，職業所在，惰氣乘之。萬事敗壞，於此，其言也，而無去勉之日，誦於心，勿去於口，蓋是非善越禮犯義者，則為非為惡。余好惡，雖有不信，盡別心，而進則由儉入奢，是已若以貧弱不堪之國，奢示儉，古人言之，余願國民。願惡壯士，尤也。近歲則由儉入奢，是已若以貧弱不堪之國，奢示儉，古人言之，余願國民。病夫與壯士，尤也。近歲則由儉入奢，是已若以貧弱不堪之國，奢示儉，古人言之，余願國民。於道與壯士，尤也。近歲則由儉入奢，是已若以貧弱不堪之國，奢示儉，古人言之，余願國民。不時而此，武律與道，同時惟並進，則共和之國，乃穩固而不搖，至國防問題，我國正在休養生息。不知而此，武律與道，同時惟並進，則共和之國，乃穩固而不搖，至國防問題，我國正在休養生息。教育之，而此，武律與道，同時惟並進，則共和之國，乃穩固而不搖，至國防問題，我國正在休養生息。余故以十兄弟，親愛之意，肥全國民，同心同德，則國必興，余以此祝我中華民國者，四萬萬人之中華。

本義 the original idea. 以國爲本位勿以一身一家爲本位 to hold as one's principle loyalty to the nation instead of to any man or house. 屈小己以利大眾 to prefer the interest of the whole body to that of a few individuals. 民無信不立 without faith no nation will stand. 文明各國有以詐欺行爲誼人者其受辱若撻之於市朝 in some civilized countries the deceitful are by-words among their fellow-men, and they feel the shame of public contempt. 重信義 has laid much stress on faith and righteousness. 習爲講張 to have acquired the habit of deceitfulness. 立身 to regulate one's person. 立身以不妄語爲本 the foundation for the regulation of a person is that no lie should be told. 對內對外 to deal with internal or external problem. 保存國粹 to preserve the tradition of a nation. 名教 the Moral Teaching. 自有不可磨滅者存 there is something of an indestructible essence in it. 恆 constant; constancy. 有事時犯一亂字無事時犯一偷字 should anything happen his presence of mind will be lost, and should nothing happen he will be idle. 標準 standard. 國民生活程度 the standard of living of the people. 國防 National Defence. 頗爲近日風潮所鼓盪 being flooded by the recent tide of sedition. 精神教育 moral education.

## 第二十九課

外部札總稅務司上海英商出口紙捲煙仍照每百觔徵稅四錢五分前經多收之稅應以

## 存票發還文

爲札行事案查內地機器製造品應徵值百抽五正稅一道以後無論運往何處概免重徵歷經本部查照定章核准飭遵在案上年准駐京英國薩公使照稱英商在滬所造紙捲煙出口時祇可按照天津條約所附稅則煙絲等類每百觔徵收四錢五分其已經另外加徵之數應飭繳還等因又准美國康公使函稱上海晉隆洋行所造紙捲煙事同前因經本部往返辯駁嗣允以如仍照煙絲納稅即不沾不再重徵之利益應照土貨常例出口納稅後如復進他口應納復進口稅如再入內地應逢關納稅過下抽釐茲准英國薩公使照覆稱據駐滬領事詳據該行稟稱查閱外部所擬辦法亦可允從請飭將從前多收之稅項如數以存票繳還本行等語照請飭遵前來除俟美公使覆到另行札飭外所有英商在上海所造紙捲煙應准以後出口仍照每百觔徵四錢五分之稅則辦理其前經照值百抽五徵稅之件如查該貨出口後并未復進他口及再入內地應核明較煙絲稅則多收若干以存票發還該商相應札行總稅務司轉飭江海關稅務司遵照辦理可也須至札者



紙捲煙 cigarettes. 每百觔徵稅四錢五分 to pay a duty of four mace and five candareens per hundred catties. 存票 draw-back. 內地機器製造品 products of machinery from inland places. 應徵值百抽五正稅一道 shall pay a five per cent ad valorem duty. 以後運往何處概免重徵 which will exempt them from any further payment wherever they may be transported. 天津條約所附稅則 the Customs Tariff appended to the Tientsin Treaty. 事同前因 to the same effect. 經本部往返辯駁 after much correspondence, the Board. 即不沾不再重徵之利益 they shall be entitled to no exemption privilege as stated. 應照土貨常例 but shall be governed by the regular procedure in regard to Native produce. 出口納稅後如復進他口應復納進口稅如再入內地應逢關納稅過卞抽釐 viz. such goods, after the payment of an export duty at the port of exportation, shall pay a re-import duty, if re-imported, or if carried inland, pay duty at each Custom station and likin at each likin barrier. 所擬辦法 the procedure laid down. 其前經照值百抽五徵稅之件如查該貨出口後并未復進他口及再入內地應核明較煙絲稅則多收若干以存票發還該商 with regard to those which have hitherto been required to pay duty at the rate of five per cent ad valorem, you will take means to ascertain the amount in excess of the rate provided in the Tobacco and Silk Tariff and return same to the merchants concerned as draw-backs, provided it shall have been satisfactorily established that said goods have not been re-imported or re-entered at an inland place. 江海關稅務司 the Commissioner of Customs at Shanghai.

第三十課  
中華民國憲法芻議

憲法之性質

憲法之種類夥矣有成文憲法焉有不成文憲法焉有單一國憲法焉有聯邦國憲法焉有君主憲法焉有共和憲法焉有剛性憲法焉有柔性憲法焉成文憲法與不成文憲法以形式爲區別單一國憲法與聯邦國憲法以國體爲區別君主憲法與共和憲法以政體爲區別剛性憲法與柔性憲法以本質爲區別其所以區別不同而其區別則一也吾人對憲法問題必先確定其爲何種憲法然後所擬之條文乃有所依據而不致前後抵觸也今得以次略論之夫不成文憲法其條例發生於歷史及習慣無明文之可憑其或見諸明文者亦散寓於尋常法律之中固未嘗融會錯綜而特爲編定也民國肇興百廢待舉既無憲法歷史及習慣之足言又無尋常法律規定之可憑然則不成文憲法其不適用於吾國也審矣又況統一已久純粹聯邦憲法自無當於採用若夫君主憲法今則更不待言矣是故吾國憲法應爲共和單一國成文憲法可無疑義至其本質適於剛性乎抑適於柔性乎是爲最有討論價值之問題也

憲法之爲剛性柔性其說創自英國法學鉅子勃拉斯二者之區別純在乎其性質之不同故憲法之分類此爲最重要者也凡憲法之修正或以特別手續行之或以特別機關行之或以特別手續特別機關行之與普通立法迥然不同者謂之剛性憲法或曰強性憲法凡以普通立法手續普通立法機關行之與普通立法無或稍異者謂之柔性憲法或曰弱性憲法二種憲法既相異若此其結果遂割若鴻溝昭然各別不可不辨也蓋剛性憲法之修正既非普通立法之可比則其位置及效力較普通法律自高一層故普通法律不能變更之立法機關不能搖動之柔性憲法則反是其位置及效力與普通法律同故普通法律可以變更之立法機關可以搖動之此剛性憲法與柔性憲法區別之大較也

## 憲法之性質 The Nature of the Constitution.

成文憲法 statute law. 不成文憲法 common law.  
單一國 single state. 聯邦國 federal union. 剛  
性憲法 rigid constitution. 柔性憲法 flexible  
constitution. 本質 nature. 採用 to adopt. 英國  
法學鉅子勃拉斯 Mr. James Bryce, one of the  
leading English authorities on Constitutional Law.  
分類 to classify; classification. 修正 to amend. 特  
別手續 special manner provided for by the con-  
stitution under the amendment clause; special  
procedure. 特別機關 special organ; special author-  
ity. 普通立法 ordinary legislation; ordinary  
process of legislation. 較普通法律自高一層  
being invested with a certain degree of superiority  
to the ordinary law of the land. 位置 position;  
situation. 效力 effect. 此剛性憲法與柔性憲法  
區別之大較也 this is the main difference between  
the two types of constitutions.

## 第三十一課 續

請進言其利弊剛性憲法與柔性憲法各有其利亦各有其弊焉剛性憲法之利有二  
 一曰鞏固 此項憲法其修正之手續視修正普通法律特爲繁難故在法律之中立於最鞏固之  
 地位屹然有不可動搖之勢若柔性憲法則反是立法機關平常使用其權力便可變更之國家政  
 治上之制度人民經濟上之狀態時或有震撼之虞而其利則活潑流動易適合於時勢之變遷不  
 似剛性憲法之一成而不易變化也然惟其不易變化斯鞏固矣雖然鞏固不鞏固亦非立於絕對  
 之地位特比較上之情形耳夫無論何種法律若全然拒絕變更將不適支配於政治之實況倘變  
 更頻數人民亦不堪其煩擾故剛性憲法依一定之手續亦未嘗不可以變更之柔性憲法雖變更  
 手續較易亦無故而數數變更之理也然而柔性憲法必不足以得剛性憲法之利剛性憲法若  
 善用之實可以兼收柔性憲法之利卽國家根本上之大法應恆久不變者以憲法定之其必須因  
 時制宜者則規定於憲法外之法律是也此剛性憲法之利一也

二曰尊重 國民心理多隨憲法本體爲轉移剛性憲法其地位既高出於一切法律之上其制定  
 又有種種手續之繁故國民尊敬而鄭重之若柔性憲法制定易變更亦易非國民之自治能力在  
 歷史上已完全發達者對於此項憲法每易惹起其輕視之心此剛性憲法之利二也

綜觀以上各種利弊是剛性柔性均未可以厚非然兩利相權取其重兩害相權取其輕斯則從利  
 害衡之吾國憲法當以剛性憲法爲原則也

且進而言大勢之所趨剛性柔性既各有利弊故各國憲法亦有畸剛畸柔之不同然考今之採用  
 柔性憲法者祇英吉利匈牙利意大利三國其餘各國則無不行剛性憲法者矣且有昔屬柔性憲  
 法因鑒於易受搖動之弊改而從剛性憲法者矣若夫昔屬剛性憲法改而從柔性憲法者則殊屬  
 罕觀更觀近世以來新憲法之發生無有取於柔性者然則世界之趨勢可知矣斯又從大勢衡之  
 吾國憲法當以剛性憲法爲原則也

利弊 merits and demerits. 鞏固 stability.  
屹然有不可動搖之勢 being exceedingly im-  
mutable. 國家政治上之制度 the political  
system of a country. 人民經濟上之狀態 the  
economical attitude of the people. 活潑流動  
elastic; elasticity. 易適合於時勢之變遷 it can  
be readily adapted to the growing needs and ever  
changing conditions of the country. 絕對 absolute.  
比較 relative; comparative. 國家根本上之大法  
the fundamental law of a country. 憲法本體 the  
constitution itself. 尊重 respectableness; respect-  
ability. 人民之自治能力 the capability of the  
people in self-government. 完全發達 well  
developed. 兩利相權取其重 in weighing two  
advantages one should take a course with the  
greater advantage. 大勢之所趨 the tendency  
of the world.

## 第三十二課

## 中華民國約法

## 第一章 國家 五月一日公布

第一條 中華民國由中華人民組織之

第二條 中華民國之主權本於國民之全體

第三條 中華民國之領土依從前帝國所有之疆域

## 第二章 人民

第四條 中華民國人民無種族階級宗教之區別法律上均為平等

第五條 人民享有左列各款之自由權 (一) 人民之身體非依法律不得逮捕拘禁審問處罰

(二) 人民之住宅非依法律不得侵入或搜索 (三) 人民於法律範圍內有保有財產

及營業之自由 (四) 人民於法律範圍內有言論著作刊行及集會結社之自由 (五)

人民於法律範圍內有書信祕密之自由 (六) 人民於法律範圍內有居住遷徙之自

由 (七) 人民於法律範圍內有信教之自由

第六條 人民依法律所定有請願於立法院之權

第七條 人民依法律所定有訴訟於法院之權

第八條 人民依法律所定有訴願於行政官署及陳訴於平政院之權

第九條 人民依法令所定有應任官考試及從事公務之權

第十條 人民依法律所定有選舉及被選舉之權

第十八條	第十七條	第十六條	第十五條	第十四條	第十三條	第十二條	第十一條	
大總統提出法律案及預算案於立法院	大總統召集立法院宣	大總統對國民之全團負責任	大總統代表中華民國	大總統為國之元首總攬統治權	大總統	本章之規定與陸海軍法令及紀律不相抵觸者軍人適用之	人民依法律所定有納稅之義務	人民依法律所定有納稅之義務

中華民國約法 Amended Provisional Constitution of the Republic of China. 組織 to make up. 主權 sovereignty. 本於國民之全體 vested in the whole body of the people. 領土 territory. 依從前帝國所有之疆域 co-extensive with that of the former Chinese Empire. 區別 distinction. 法律上均為平等 equal before the law. 拘禁 kept in custody. 依法律 in accordance with the law. 非依法律 without due process of law. 言論著作刊行及集會結社 speak, write, publish, form associations and meet together. 書信秘密 inviolability of correspondence. 請願於立法院 send petitions to the House of Legislature. 訴訟 take legal proceedings. 行政官署 the executive courts. 平政院 the Administrative Court. 應任官考試 to offer one's self as a candidate at the examination for entry to official appointments. 服兵役 to undergo military service. 抵觸 conflict with. 適用 applicable to. 國之元首 the Chief Magistrate; the head of the nation. 總攬統治權 to have supreme control of the jurisdiction of the country. 負責任 to be responsible. 召集 to convoke; to convene. 宣告開會停會閉會 to announce the opening, the suspension and the closing of its sessions

第三十二課 續

第十九條

第二十條

第二十一條

第二十二條

第二十三條

第二十四條

第二十五條

第二十六條

第四章

第三十條

第三十一條

大總統為增進公益或執行法律或基於法律之委任發布命令并得使發布之但不得以命令變更法律

大總統維持公安或防禦非常災害事機緊急不能召集立法院時經參政院之同意得發布與法律有同等效力之命令但須於次期立法院開會之始請求自認

前項命令立法官制官規時嗣後即失其效力  
大總統任文武職官

大總統宣戰媾和  
大總統率全國陸海軍  
大總統定陸海軍編制及兵額

大總統接見外國大使  
大總統增加人民負擔之條款須經立法院之同意

大總統締結條約但變更領土或增加人民負擔之條款須經立法院之同意

大總統頒給勳章并其他榮典  
大總統代其職權

大總統依法律之規定赦免或減輕刑罰但大總統代其職權  
大總統依法律之規定赦免或減輕刑罰但大總統代其職權

立法

立法以人民選舉之議員組織立法院行之立法院之組織及議員選舉方法由約

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之

立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之  
立法會議決之



## 第三十三條

## 第三十二條

得半或大須立	會期個集立	之席件第條五二至院之可四
祕數出總公法	內月之法	同議其五第條十第前訴決分
密之席統開院	召得會院	意員表十五第條八項訟提三
之可議之之會	集於期每	行過決七十二第條第於起以
決員要但之會	臨閉以年	之半以條五十二及一大彈上
時過求經議	時會四召	數出事條八十第條理劾之

增進公益 to advance public interests. 基於法律之委任 duties imposed upon him by the law. 發布命令並得使發布之 to issue, and/or cause to issue orders. 不得以命令變更法律 shall not by any such orders alter the law. 非常災害 extraordinary disasters. 事機緊急 the urgency of the situation. 請求追認 to ask for an Act of Indemnity. 失其效力 to become null and void. 定陸海軍編制及兵額 to decide the organization and strength of the national forces. 變更領土 involve changes in the national boundaries. 增加人民負擔 the imposition of liabilities. 宣告戒嚴 to proclaim martial law. 爵位勳章并其他榮典 titles of nobility, decorations and other honorary distinctions. 大赦特赦減刑復權 general amnesty, special pardons, commutation of sentence, and restoration of civil rights. 約法會議 Provisional Constitution Conference. 提出關於政治上之疑義要求大總統答覆 to bring forward interpellations concerning political affairs and submit them to the President with demands for an explanation thereof. 謀叛行為 to attempt treason. 以總議員五分之四以上之出席議員四分之三以上之可決 on a resolution carried by a vote of three-fourths of the members present at a quorum of the House consisting of more than four-fifths of the total membership of the House. 提越彈劾之訴訟於大理院 to institute impeachment proceedings.

## 第三十四課 續

## 第三十四條

立法院議決之法律案由大總統公布施行立法院議決之法律案大總統否認時聲明理由交院覆議如立法院出席議員三分以上仍執前議而大總統認為於內治外交有重大危害或執行有重大障礙時經參政院之同意得不公布之

## 第三十五條

立法院議長副議長由議員互選之以得票過投票總數之半者為當選

## 第三十六條

立法院議員於院內之言論及表決對於院外不負責任

## 第三十七條

立法院議員除現行犯及關於內亂外患之犯罪外會期中非經立法院許可不得逮捕

## 第三十八條

立法院法由立法院自定之

## 第五章

## 行政

## 第三十九條

行政以大總統為首長置國務卿一人贊襄之

## 第四十條

行政事務置外交內務財政陸軍海軍司法教育農商交通各部分掌之

## 第四十一條

各部總長依法律命令執行主管行政事務

## 第四十二條

國務卿各部總長及特派員代表大總統出席立法院發言

## 第四十三條

國務卿各部總長有違法行為時受肅政廳之糾彈及平政院之審理

## 第六章

## 司法

## 第四十四條

司法以大總統任命之法官組織法院行之法院之編制及法官之資格以法律定之

第四十五條 法院依法律獨立審判民刑訴訟但關於行政訴訟及其他特別訴訟各依其本法之規定行之

第四十六條 大理院對於第三十一條第九款之彈劾事件其審判程序別以法律定之

第四十七條 法院之審判須公開之但認為妨害安甯秩序或善良風俗者得祕密之

第四十八條 法官在任中不得減俸或轉職非依法律受刑罰之宣告或應免職之懲戒處分不得解職懲戒條規以法律定之

第七章 參政院

第四十九條 參政院應大總統之諮詢審議重要政務參政院之組織由約法會決之

議決 to pass. 公布 to promulgate. 否認 to veto. 交院覆議 to refer it back for reconsideration. 重大障礙 serious obstacles. 現行犯 one who in the actual commission of a crime. 關於內亂外患之犯罪 concerned in domestic rebellion or treason abroad. 行政 the Administration. 國務卿 Secretary of State. 行政事務 administrative affairs. 有違法行為 to commit a breach of the law. 肅政廳 Censorate. 審理 to try; trial. 司法 Judiciary. 法官 judiciary official; judge. 法院 judicial court; judiciary. 資格 qualification. 法院依法律獨立審判民刑訴訟 the judiciary shall be independent and shall be competent to deal with both civil and criminal cases in accordance with the law. 程序 proceedings. 妨害安甯秩序或善良風俗 detrimental to peace and order or to public morals. 轉職 to transfer. 非依法律受刑罰之宣告或應免職之懲戒處分不得解職 nor shall they be dismissed from office except after due trial and pronouncement of sentence of guilty or of dismissal. 懲戒條規 rules for the punishment of judicial officials. 諮詢 to consult. 審議 to consider and discuss.

第三十五課 總

第八章 會計

第五十條

新課稅及變更稅率以法律定之現行稅未經法律變更者仍舊徵收

第五十一條

國家歲出入每年依法律定之預算內之支出須於預算內設預算費

第五十二條

因特別事件得於預算案內預支之支出不得廢除或裁減之

第五十三條

為備預算不足或於預算以外之支出須於預算內設預算費

第五十四條

左列各款之支出非經大總統之同意不得廢除或裁減之

第五十五條

海軍編制所必需者

第五十六條

為國際戰爭或戡定內亂及其他非常事變不能召集立法院時大總統經參政院

第五十七條

之同意得為財政緊急處分但須於次期立法院開會之始請求追認

第五十八條

預算不成立時執行前年度預算會計年度既開始預算尚未議定之時同

第九章 制定憲法程序

第五十九條

審計員之編制由約法會議議決之

第六十條

中華民國憲法案由憲法起草委員會起草憲法起草委員會以參政院所推舉之

第六十一條

中華民國憲法案由參政院審定之

第六十二條

中華民國憲法案經參政院審定後由大總統提出於國民會議決定之國民會議

第六十三條

之組織由約法會議議決之

第六十四條

國民會議由大總統召集並解散之

第六十五條

中華民國憲法由大總統公布之

廢止	之臨時法	施行政條	第六十七條	第六十八條	第六十九條	修訂之	決出由大	出席出大	修經立二	員三分條	第六十六條	力非依律	其古待條	蒙効力與	後回藏與	優待清布	二十日宣	法不五條	約以十條	行前四條	第六十條
於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法	於本約法
本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法	本約法
約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法	約法
法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公	法十公
施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日	施行之日

會計 Finance. 新課租稅及變更稅率 the levying of new taxes and duties and all changes in tariffs. 仍舊徵收 to collect as heretofore. 國家歲出歲入 the annual receipts and expenditures of the nation. 所議之預算 the budget decision. 得於預算案內預定年限繼續費 continuing expenditures for a specified number of years may be included in the budget. 預算不足或於預算以外之支出 deficiencies and unforeseen expenditures. 預算費 a special fund. 廢除或裁減 to eliminate or reduce. 裁定內亂 to suppress internal disturbance. 爲財政緊急處分 to make urgent arrangements for the use of national fund. 預算不成立 no agreement can be reached with regard to the budget. 會計年度 fiscal year. 審計院 the National Audit Bureau. 提出報告書於 submit them in a report to. 制定憲法程序 Procedure for Compiling Constitution. 憲法起草委員會 Committee for Drafting the Articles of the Constitution. 審定 to revise. 附則 Annex. 現行 in force. 辭位 to abdicate. 優待條件 the Stipulations regarding the Favourable Treatment of the Ta Ching Emperor. 清皇族 the Ching Imperial Clan. 增修 to amend; to carry out the amendment. 廢止 to cease to have effect.

## 第三十六課 總稅務司申外部各口岸未掛號信局請令補行掛號文

爲申呈事據郵政總辦申稱據廈門郵政司文稱本口時有未掛號之民局違章私將信包囑附輪船帶寄被官局查出扣留此等情事如係掛號民局照章罰令收贖結案惟有未掛號信局不肯違章認罰竟自棄包不顧以致官局無法迫令將包取回只得照章拆包提信接件送投照章罰令收件人三倍納費如此辦理掛號者受罰不掛號者雖係違章取巧轉得幸免如何懲治請定辦法等因到來本總辦查設立郵政原爲公家與民間交便前此既有民局一項是以亟圖聯絡早經定有章程令口岸民局必赴官局掛號始准藉重郵政之力用輪船運送信包定辦有年竟有不肯掛號者不但違章私寄且於信包查獲扣留之後不復承認冀令收件人代輸罰款伏思此等民局既有礙於郵政復爲盡於商民與尋常違犯郵章迥不相似郵政既無追究之權要須設法懲辦等因據此總稅務司查據所稱各情實與郵政平民兩有關礙竊維各口岸輪船前經訂立合同允給津貼非郵政官局所交信包概不代寄因各口岸有民局是以特准該民局等在官局掛號由官局代爲寄包其不掛號者自不能代寄惟此等不掛號之民局往往亦效貨物走私之法與輪船中水手等串通私將信包藏匿船內偷運偶被關員查獲因係散處商民交寄應投之家信等件是以未便充公照章只有兩項辦法一係將扣拏之原包仍交回原寄之民局一係代爲拆送照章向收件人索罰三倍但原寄之民局往往不肯承認是第一項辦法斷難照行只有第二項辦法尙可照辦惟如此辦理該民局等未受懲處不能戒其後不違章可否由各口岸地方官再行曉諭未掛號之民局令其補行赴官局掛號俾得一體由官局代寄信包之利益如仍不遵即勒令一律歇業抑另有何項辦法之處卽請

貴部酌定示覆以便轉飭遵照可也須至申呈者

郵政總辦 Postal Secretary. 廈門郵政司 Postal  
Commissioner at Amoy. 未掛號 unregistered.  
民局 native postal hong. 違章 contrary to law.  
信包 packets. 扣留 to seize. 照章罰令收贖結案  
the matter can be disposed of by the imposition  
of a fine, as is provided in the regulations, upon  
the return of the packets. 棄包不願 to leave the  
packets unclaimed. 罰令收件人三倍納費 to  
charge a penalty equal to three times the usual  
rate. 幸免 to get off unpunished. 公家 the  
government. 民間 the public at large. 便 in-  
terests. 聯絡 to cultivate the good will of. 竟  
to our surprise. 有礙 a menace to. 爲蠱 a curse.  
尋常 every day; usual 追究之權 power of pro-  
secution. 關礙 detrimental. 合同 a contract.  
津貼 subsidies. 走私 to smuggle. 輪船中水手等  
members of the ship's crew. 串通 secret arrange-  
ments. 偶 now and then. 關員 customs officers.  
各口岸地方官 the local authorities at the different  
ports. 歇業 to close one's establishments.

第三十七課

第一條

第二條

第三條

第四條

第五條

第六條

第七條

國幣之鑄發權專屬於政府  
以庫平純銀六錢四分八釐為價格之單位定名曰圓

銀幣一種 半圓 二角 一角

銅幣一種 五釐 二釐 一釐

國幣均照此算均 以十進每圓十分之一稱為角百分之一稱為分千分之一稱為釐公私兌

國幣重量此成率 總重七錢二分銀九銅一

銀幣 總重七錢二分銀七銅三

角銀幣 總重七錢二分銀四釐七銅三

分銀幣 總重七錢二分銀二釐七銅五

分銅幣 總重九錢八分銅九錫百之四鉛百之一

釐銅幣 總重九錢八分銅五錫百之四鉛百之一

釐銅幣 總重九錢八分銅五錫百之四鉛百之一

圓銀幣 總重九錢八分銅五錫百之四鉛百之一

國幣之適用此種限制幣制 以合圓以內為限但租稅之收受國家銀行之兌換

國幣之適用此種限制幣制 以合圓以內為限但租稅之收受國家銀行之兌換



第十三條	第十二條	第十一條	第十條	第九條	第八條											
令本條例施行之日以教	收鑄政府平釐之費須應政府之代鑄者生銀須託政府允之但每枚	毀損者不得強人鑄受	凡毀損之幣如查係故意	換新幣	之五者得照數向政府兌	因行用而磨損減少者	一致者五角以內	一圓銀幣如因行用磨損	差不得逾千分之三	色與法定成色相其公	各種銀幣無論何枚之成	三比之其重量與法定重量之相	比之其重量與法定重量之相	各與法定成色相其公	量不得逾千分之三	各種銀幣無論何枚之公重

國幣條例 The Law for the National Currency. 鑄發權 the right of minting and issuance. 庫平純銀 of pure silver (kuping weight). 錢 mace. 分 candareen. 釐 li. 價格之單位 the unit of the national coin. 圓 yuan. 二角 20-cent piece. 鎊 nickel. 二分 2 cent copper piece. 五釐 5 li piece. 國幣計算均以十進 the value of the national coin shall be in decimal progression. 重量 weight. 成色 fineness. 總重 gross weight. 用數無限制 no restrictions shall be placed upon the use of. 每次授受以合.....圓以內 the amount of .....pieces involved in one transaction shall not exceed.....dollars. 不適用此種之限制 this restriction shall not be applied to. 型式 design. 以教令頒定之 shall be promulgated by an Instructive Order. 其重量與法定重量相比之公差 the ratio of difference between the weight of each silver coin and that of the legal tender. 因行用磨損 on account of wear and tear. 查係故意毀損 found to be mutilated purposely. 生銀 silver bullion. 收鑄費 to charge minting fee. 施行 in force; to enforce.

## 第三十八課

## 國幣條例施行細則

## 第一條

凡公款出入必須用國幣但本細則有特別規定者依其規定

## 第二條

舊有各官局所鑄發之一圓銀幣政府以國幣兌換改鑄之但於一定期限內認爲與國幣一圓有同一之價格

## 第三條

右期限以教令定之  
市面通用之舊銀角舊銅圓舊制錢政府以國幣收回改鑄之但於一定期限內仍准各照市價行用前項舊幣用以完納公款時每月內各地方公署懸示市價收受之其市價以前一月該地方之平均中價爲標準

## 第四條

右期限以教令定之  
凡以生銀完納公款或託政府代鑄國幣者以庫平純銀六錢五分四釐折合一圓其他種平色之生銀折合價格別依附表所定

國幣條例施行細則 Regulations for the Enforcement of the Currency Law. 公款出入 in the transaction of public accounts. 依 to observe. 舊有各官局所鑄發 coined and issued by the old mints. 改鑄 to remint. 於一定期限內 within a definite period. 有同一之價格 to possess the same value as. 收回 to recall. 照市價行用 to be circulated at the market prices. 完納公款 to pay taxes; to pay public accounts. 懸示市價收受之 to issue notices fixing the current rate of the coins at which the offices shall receive old coins. 市價以前一月該地方之平均中價爲標準 to take as the current rate an average or mean of the local exchange rates of the previous month. 以庫平純銀六錢五分四釐折合一圓 in the calculation one dollar shall contain 65.4 candareens (kuping weight). 他種平色 of other weight and fineness. 折合價格別依附表所定 shall be converted at the rate of that which set up in the schedule attached.

## 第三十九課 續

- 第五條 凡公款出入向例用銀兩計算者一律照各該處銀兩原收原支平色數目依第五條所規定改換計算數目之名稱但向例用銅元制錢或他項錢文者及用銀兩折合他項錢文者又由錢文折合銀圓者由各地方公署按照收支實數呈報國稅廳核准折合改換計算之名稱
- 第六條 各項賦稅稅率依第四第五條所規定將實徵數目以釐爲斷釐以下用四捨五入法別爲定表率布告之
- 第七條 凡民間債項以銀兩計者依附表所規定折合國幣改換計算之名稱其以舊銀角舊銅元舊制錢或他項錢文計者依第五條所規定折合國幣改換計算之名稱
- 凡未依本條於契券上改用計算之名稱者嗣後如有爭訟即照本條例公布日之市價作爲標準判斷之
- 第八條 凡在中國境內以國幣授受者無論何種款項概不得拒絕
- 第九條 凡違犯國幣法第四條及本細則第八條者准有關係人告發經審實後處以十圓以上千圓以下之罰款
- 官吏及經營官營事業人有犯前項事情時經同一程序後處以五十圓以上三千圓以下之罰款
- 第十條 本細則施行之地域及期日以教令定之
- 第十一條 本細則如有應增改之處另以教令定之

用銀兩計算 to be calculated in taels 依第五條所規定改換  
 計算數目之名稱 the different amounts should be converted into the  
 terms in accordance with Art. 5 of the National Currency Law. 收支實  
 數 the actual sum of receipts and disbursements. 國稅廳. Bureau of  
 National Revenue. 以釐爲斷 in calculation, the li shall be the smallest  
 of denominations. 四捨五入法 the discarding of 4 and retaining of  
 5. 券契 deeds, contracts and promisory notes. 如有爭訟 if any lawsuit  
 arises. 照本條例公布日之市價作爲標準判斷之 in judgment,  
 the exchange rate on the day of the promulgation of these regulations  
 shall be considered as a standard. 准有關係人告發 the party concerned  
 may bring a lawsuit against him. 經審實後 when convicted. 經營官  
 營事業人 any member connected with the government enterprises. 經  
 同一程序後 after the same procedure has been observed.

## 第四十課

總稅務司申外部洋貨復出口運往青島稅項概給存票不發免票文

爲申呈事竊查青島設關徵稅修改辦法一事新訂合同第一款內載有由中國按膠海關進口正稅實數每年提撥二成交與青島德官作爲中國政府津貼青島租地之用等語故由總稅務司通飭各關稅務司以若有洋貨復出口前往青島卽應發給存票毋庸發給免單等語去後茲據江海關稅務司詳稱本口歷來辦法卽係洋貨復運通商他口時若查該貨或雖無應得存票之據而照江海關向章應給免照或進口已逾三年并不由本關發給存票或免照卽於總單內在開列貨物情形以下添註該貨業經在本口完過進口正稅無庸重徵等字樣迨至他口時便可查驗放行嗣後若有以上兩端貨物報往青島可否照辦之處詳請核示前來總稅務司查前經飭各關只發存票不發免照之意義係因按年應發交青島之二成稅項實與洋貨在青島進口之全數帳項不無關係若此貨物遇有執持免照不再在青島完納稅項者卽係在復出口之海關存過稅款迨至在青島稽核二成實數時雖與他口已辦之事已收之稅無關而於青島帳項殊多紊亂伏以江海關所註之總單字樣雖非發給免照之執據惟此添註之字樣確與免照無所區別是以復經飭該關稅務司凡有前往青島之貨仍遵前例辦理若遇有照向章可發免照者卽不應添註總單內前往青島不重徵字樣均應專發存票其於總單內填給免稅之字樣後卽停辦均令一體在青島完清進口稅項不致有未經徵收而核扣二成之累云云去訖既據前因理合備文申請

貴部鑒查可也須至申呈者

青島 Tsingtau. 修改辦法 new arrangement. 設關徵稅 the collection of Custom duties. 新訂 recently concluded. 膠海關 Custom House at Tsingtau. 青島租地之用 the expenditure incurred by the Government of the Leased Territory of Tsingtau. 二成 twenty per cent. 進口正稅 import duty. 通飭 a circular. 洋貨復出口 foreign re-exports. 前往青島 destined for the Port of Tsingtau. 存票 a drawback certificate. 免單 a free permit. 本口歷來辦法 a practice which has been in force at his port. 總單 the General Memo. 添註 to enter. 字樣 words to the effect that. 重徵 any further payment of duty. 按年應撥交青島二成稅項實與洋貨在青島進口之全數帳項不無關係 the annual amount of the "20% duty" due the German Authorities at Tsingtau varies according to the total receipt of import duty on foreign goods at that port. 雖非發給免照之執據 although it is not stated in the exact form of a free permit. 確與免照無所區別 has the force of a free permit. 不致有未經徵收而核扣二成之累 thus doing away with the extra amount of work as would have otherwise been entailed, of keeping an account of what it does not actually collect.

## 第四十一課

蔡元培中華民國新教育意見書

教育有二大別曰隸屬於政治者曰超軼乎政治者專制時代（兼立憲而含專制性質者言之）教育家循政府之方針以標準教育常爲純粹之隸屬政治者共和時代教育家得立於人民之地位以定標準乃得有超軼政治之教育

清之季世隸屬政治之教育騰於教育家之口者曰軍國民教育夫軍國民教育者與社會主義併馳在他國已有道消之兆然在我國則強鄰逼處亟圖自衛而歷年喪失之國權非憑藉武力勢難恢復且軍人革命以後不保無軍人執政之一時期非行舉國皆兵之制將使軍人社會永爲全國中特別之階級而無以平均其勢力則如所謂軍國民教育者誠今日所不能不採者也

雖然今之世界所恃以競爭者不僅在武力而尤在財力且武力之半亦由財力而孳乳於是有所謂二之隸屬政治者曰實利主義之教育以人民生計爲普通教育之中堅其主張最力者至以普通學術悉寓於樹藝烹飪裁縫及金木土工之中此其說創於美洲而近亦盛行於歐陸我國地寶不發實業界之組織尙幼稚人民失業至多而國甚貧實利主義之教育固亦當務爲急者也

是二者所謂疆兵富國之主義也願兵可強也然或溢而爲私鬪爲侵略則奈何國可富也然或不免知欺愚強劫弱演而爲貧富懸絕資本家與勞動家血戰之慘劇則奈何曰教之以公民道德何爲公民道德曰法蘭西之革命也所標揭者曰自由平等親愛道德之要旨盡於是矣孔子曰匹夫不可奪志孟子曰大丈夫者富貴不能淫貧賤不能移威武不能屈自由之謂也古者蓋謂之義孔子曰己所不欲勿施於人子貢曰我不欲人之加諸我也吾亦欲毋加諸人禮大學記曰所惡於前毋以先後所惡於後毋以從前所惡於右毋以交於左所惡於左毋以交於右平等之謂也古者蓋謂之恕自由者就主觀而言之也然我欲自由則亦當尊人之自由故通於客觀平等者就客觀而言之也然我不以不平等遇人則亦不容人之以不平等遇我故通於主觀二者相對而實相成要

皆由消極一方面言之荷  
 不進之以積極之道則  
 夫吾同胞固有因生稟  
 之不同境遇與人所迫  
 由而不遂求與人平等  
 不能者將一切置之而  
 所謂自由若平等之量仍  
 孤獨無缺陷孟子曰鰥  
 者張子凡天下疲癯  
 殘疾擲獨寡皆吾兄弟  
 之類連而無告者也禹思  
 天下有溺者由己溺之稷  
 思天下有飢者由己飢之  
 伊尹思天下之人匹夫匹  
 婦有不與被堯舜之澤者  
 若己推而納之溝中孔子  
 曰己欲立而立人己欲達  
 而達人親愛之謂也古者  
 蓋謂之仁三者誠也古道  
 德之根原而公民道德教  
 育之所有事者也

諫屬 dependent upon. 超軼 independent of. 方針 policy. 立於  
 人民之地位以定標準 to take his view-point from amongst the people  
 and decide the educational policy. 季世 the last decades or closing  
 period. 騰於教育家之口 to be advocated or voiced by the education-  
 alists. 軍國民教育 military education. 與社會主義悞離 to be  
 opposite to the principle of socialism. 道消 on the decline; out of vogue.  
 國權 national rights. 憑藉 by means of. 軍人執政 military domi-  
 nancy; the ruling power being in the hands of men hailed from the ranks.  
 舉國皆兵 to make every citizen a soldier. 孳乳 to provide and maintain.  
 實利主義 utilitarianism. 中堅 essential character. 地質不發 with  
 its natural resources still untouched. 幼稚 in the initial stage. 溢而為  
 the undue growth of. 侵略 aggressive. 貧富懸絕 the unequal distribu-  
 tion of wealth. 親愛 fraternity. 匹夫不可奪志 "The will of even a  
 common man cannot be taken from him." 大丈夫者富貴不能淫貧  
 賤不能移威武不能屈 "To be above the power of riches and honours  
 to make dissipated, of poverty and mean condition to make swerve from  
 principle, and of power and force to make bend—these characteristics  
 constitutes the great man." 義 righteousness. 己所不欲勿施於人  
 "Not to do others as you would not wish done to yourself." 所惡於前  
 毋以先後所惡於後毋以從前所惡於右毋以交於左所惡於左  
 毋以交於右 "What he hates in those who are before him, let him not  
 therewith precede those who are behind him; what he hates in those who  
 are behind him, let him not therewith follow those who are before him;  
 what he hates to receive on the right, let him not bestow on the left; what  
 he hates to receive on the left, let him not bestow on the right." 恕 for-  
 bearing. 主觀 subjective. 客觀 objective. 消極 negative. 積極  
 positive. 生稟之不齊 born with unequal abilities. 忽置 to neglect.  
 疲癯殘疾擲獨寡 those who are infirm, disabled, helpless and miser-  
 able. 達 to elevate; to enhance. 仁 humanity.

## 第四十二課 續

教育而至於公民道德宜若可爲最終之鵠的矣曰未也公民道德之教育猶未能超軼乎政治者也世所謂最良政治者不外乎以最大多數之最大幸福爲鵠的最大多數者積最少數之一人而成者也一人之幸福豐衣足食也無蓄無害也不外乎現世之幸福積一人幸福而爲最大多數其鵠的猶是立法部之所評議行政部之所執行司法部之所保護如是而已矣卽進而達禮運之所謂大道爲公社會主義家所謂未來之黃金時代人各盡其所能而各得其所需要亦不外乎現世之幸福蓋政治之鵠的如是而已矣一切隸屬政治之教育充其量亦如是而已矣

雖然人不能有生而無死現世之幸福臨死而消滅人而僅僅以臨死消滅之幸福爲鵠的則所謂人生者有何等價值乎國不能有存而無亡世界不能有成而無毀全國之民全世界之人類世世相傳以此不能不消滅之幸福爲鵠的則所謂國民若人類者有何等價值乎且如是則就一人而言之殺身成仁也舍身取義也舍己而爲羣也有何等意義乎就一社會而言之與我以自由乎否則與我以死爭一民族之自由不至瀝全民族最後之一滴血不已不合全國爲一大家不已有何等意義乎且人旣無一死生破利害之觀念則必無冒險之精神無遠大之計畫見小利急近功則又能保其不爲失節墮行身敗名裂之人乎諺曰當局者迷旁觀者清非有出世間之思想者不能善處世間事吾人卽僅僅以現世幸福爲鵠的猶不可無超軼現世之觀念况鵠的不止於此者乎以現世幸福爲鵠的者政治家也教育家則否蓋世界有二方面如一紙之有表裏一爲現象一爲實體現象世界之事爲政治故以造成現世幸福爲鵠的實體世界之事爲宗教故以擺脫現世幸



福爲作用而教育者則立於現象世界而  
有事於實體世界者也故以實體世界之  
觀念爲其究竟之大目的而以現象世界  
之幸福爲其達到於實體觀念之作用  
然則現象世界與實體世界之區別何在  
耶曰前者相對而後者絕對前者範圍於  
因果律而後者超軼乎因果律前者與空  
間時間有不可離之關係而後者無空間  
時間之可言前者可以經驗而後者全恃  
直觀故實體世界者不可名言者也然而  
既以是爲觀念之一種矣則不得不強爲  
之名是以或謂之道或謂之太極或謂之  
神或謂之黑暗之意識或謂之無識之意  
志其名可以萬殊而觀念則一雖哲學之  
流派不同宗教家之儀式不同而其所達  
到之最高觀念皆如是

最終之總的 the end and aim. 最大多數之最大幸福 the  
greatest happiness of the greatest number. 立法部 the legislature. 行  
政部 the administration. 司法部 the judiciary. 充其量 to all intents  
and purposes. 殺身成仁也舍身取義也舍己而爲羣也 to throw  
away one's life and render sacrifice for one's cause or other people. 無  
一死生破利害之觀念 to have no idea of the importance of both  
active and passive fortitude. 失節墜行身敗名裂之人 a coward or  
renegade. 出世間 spiritual. 世間事 worldly affairs. 現象 Phenomenon.  
實體 reality. 擺脫 to deny. 作用 means. 相對 relative. 絕對  
absolute. 因果律 the law of cause and effect. 空間時間 space and  
time. 直觀 intuitive. 不可名言 indescribable. 流派 denomination.  
儀式 ritualism; -its. 最高觀念 the ideal conception.

## 第四十三課 續

然則教育家何以不結合於宗教而必以現象世界之幸福爲作用曰世固有厭世派之宗教若吾學以提撕實體世界觀念之故而排斥現象世界因以現象世界之文明爲罪惡之源而一切排斥之者吾以爲不然現象實體僅一世界之兩方面非截然爲互相衝突之兩世界吾人之感覺既託於現象世界則所謂實體者即在現象之中而非必滅乙而後生甲其現象世界間所以爲實體世界之障礙者不外二種意識一人我之差別二幸福之營求是也人以自衛力不平等而生強弱人界之障礙者不外二種意識一人我之差別二幸福之營求是也人以自衛力不平等而生強弱人求之意識起有人我則於現象中爲種種之界畫而與實體違有營求則當其未遂爲無己之苦痛及其既遂爲過量之要素循環於現象之中而與實體隔能劑其平則肉體之享受純任自然而意識界之營求泯人我之見亦化合現象世界各別之意識爲渾同而得與實體膺合焉故現世幸福爲不幸福之人類到達於實體世界之一種作用蓋無可疑者軍國民實利兩主義所以補自衛自存之力之不足道德教育則所以使之互相衛互相存皆所以泯營求而忘人我者也由是而進以

## 提撕實體觀念之教育

提撕實體觀念之方法如何曰消極方面使對於現象世界無厭棄而亦無執著積極方面使對於實體世界非常渴慕而漸進於領悟循思想自由言論自由之公例不以一流派之哲學一宗門之教義梏其心而惟時時懸一無方體無終始之世界觀以爲鵠如是之教育吾無以名之曰世界觀教育

雖然世界觀教育非可以旦旦而聒之也且其與現象世界之關係又非可以枯槁單簡之言說襲而取之也然則何道之由曰由美感之教育美感者合美麗與尊嚴而言之介乎現象世界與實體世界之間而爲之津梁此爲康德所創通而嗣後哲學家未有反對之者在現象世界凡人皆有

愛惡驚懼喜怒哀樂之情隨離合生死禍福利害之現象而流轉至美術則卽以此等現象爲資料而能使對之者自美感以外一無雜念例如采蓮羹豆飲食之事也而一入詩歌則別成興趣火山赤舌大風破舟可駭可怖之景也而一入圖畫則轉堪展玩是則對於現象世界無厭棄而亦無執著也人既脫離一切現象世界相對之感情而爲渾然之美感則卽所謂與造物爲友而已接觸於實體世界之觀念矣故教育家欲由現象世界而引以到達於實體世界之觀念不可不用美感之教育五者皆今日之教育所不可偏廢者軍國民主義實利主義德育主義三者爲隸屬於政治之教育（吾國古代之道德教育則間有兼涉世界觀者當分別觀之）世界觀美育主義二者爲超軼政治之教育

自衛 self-defence. 自存 self-maintenance. 未遂 ungratified; failed. 過量之要素 insatiable demand. 劑其平 to keep in equipoise; to make the two sides equal. 肉體之享受 bodily enjoyment. 人我之見 egoism. 厭棄 to feel disgust at; to be averse to. 執著 to be sticking to; to adhere to. 非常渴慕 to long after; to be thirsty for. 領悟 to perceive clearly; to be alive to. 不以一流派之哲學一宗門之教義梏其心 not to subject the mind to a prejudice for any particular philosophy or religion. 無方體 shapeless. 世界觀教育 World-education. 枯槁單簡 dry and simple. 美感之教育 Aesthetic-education 爲之津梁 to serve as a steppingstone; to bridge. 康德 Immanuel Kant. 至美術則卽以此等現象爲資料而能使對之者自美感以外一無雜念 but in the science of beauty, such outside things, in serving the artist as appropriate subject-matters, will not affect the passion, but on the contrary they simply call forth aesthetic feelings and nothing else. 轉堪展玩 instead of——, elicit one's admiration of the work.

## 第四十四課

外部照會英使上海租界外自設市場係屬中國內政所請無庸設立礙難置議文

爲照覆事上海租界外開闢華界一事○月○日准

照覆稱上海公共租界之市政中國政府既知其善自可在北京及其他大城市鎮未設巡警并僅與華人房產有關之處仿行巡警衛生等政何必專擇毗連租界會有洋商租地居住之區作爲創辦市會之場復查所謂意在阻撓中國行政之改良擴張租界之權力等語英國政府決無此心而上海地方官之用意顯欲借此以預杜租界之推廣並強令上海西人受制於中國之巡警本公使惟有以此等舉動爲有失睦誼且與本公使分應維持之利權利益大有損害而已爲此合再請速飭令將建設中國市場於上海租界隣近現時正在著手之計畫立即停止等因本部查辦理巡警衛生諸務非一日所能遍及北京於此項市政已辦理有年即各省亦多有仿辦者不得謂全未創設該處爲租界以外之地關作華人市場仿行巡警衛生等事宜在中國應有自由辦理之權不得謂地與租界毗連卽不應舉辦至

來照所稱貴國決無干涉中國整頓地方并爲租界擴張權力之心殷殷剖示惠愛實深並足徵貴國睦隣之厚誼但爲預備擴充租界計而不許中國自闢市場於租界之隣近似不免有言行相反之嫌方通商之初中國於巡警衛生各政尙未按新法舉辦恐保護或有未周是以畫界爲各國人居留之地自是數十年以來中國於舉行此等要政已大有進步本案所稱自闢市場正爲商務日盛故此舉刻不容緩其於各國洋商同一大有利益倘所設巡警衛生諸事辦理或有未盡妥善在該地方官自樂聞善言以期逐漸改良俾中外人民同受巡警保護之益乃以保護爲受制似非情理之平所請將上海租界外華人自開市場事宜卽行停辦一層本部實難置議相應照覆

貴公使查照可也須至照覆者

華界 a Chinese town. 上海公共租界之市政 the municipal form of government as introduced in the Shanghai International Settlement. 未設巡警并僅與華人房產有關之處 where no police is now in existence and where Chinese property interests only are concerned. 巡警 police. 衛生 sanitary. 毗連 bordering upon 阻撓中國行政之改良 interference with the Chinese administrative reform 擴張 to extend. 預杜 to forestall. 有失睦誼 inconsistent with the friendly relations existing between our governments. 本公使分應維持之利權利益 the rights and interests I am charged to maintain. 再請 to repeat my request. 飭令 to issue instructions; the issuance of instructions. 非一日所能遍及 can not be inaugurated all over the country in a day. 仿辦 to adopt similar measures. 在中國應有自由辦理之權 the Chinese Government are qualified to take independent action. 不得謂該地與租界毗連即不應舉辦 that the place in question is adjacent to a foreign settlement does not constitute a cause why the Chinese Government should not do so. 來照 your dispatch under reply. 殷殷剖示惠愛實深 to be kind enough to allude to the fact that. 爲預備擴充租界計 to make room for the future extension of the settlement. 似不免有言行相反之嫌 not consistent with the assurances given. 恐保護或有未周 in view of the inadequate facilities then existing for affording protection to foreigners. 其於各國洋商同一大有利益 a measure that promises equal benefit to all foreigners. 或有未盡妥善 not as satisfactory as may be desired. 自樂聞善言以期逐漸改良 undoubtedly be glad enough to make improvements upon receipt of suggestions. 所請 the application 實難置議 to be not in a position to consider.

第四十五課  
狩獵法

第一條

第二條

第三條

第四條

第五條

本法所稱狩獵指以銃器網罟或其他機械捕獲鳥獸而言  
 前項狩獵器具之種類及限制由各地方警察官署長官定之但  
 須詳報各地方最高級長官轉咨農商部  
 不論何人非經警察官署核准不得狩獵但在宅地內不使用銃  
 器前項之核准限  
 爲受領狩獵證書其程式依另表之所定狩獵  
 者領狩獵證書後應發給狩獵證書費銀一圓  
 炸藥劇藥不得以左列各種方法捕獲鳥獸  
 一 炸藥 二 劇藥 三 毒藥 四 陷阱  
 遇有特別情事須用前項各種方法時應經警察官署之核准並  
 先期布告  
 狩獵者不得於左列各處從事狩獵  
 一 禁山 二 陵寢 三 公道 四 羣衆聚集之地  
 五 寺觀廟宇境內 六 其他農商部或警察官署指定或受土地所有者之稟請  
 七 禁止狩獵他人所有之園地或柵欄內非得所有者之同意不得  
 禁止其他由農商部或警察官署指定或受土地所有者之稟請  
 鳥獸竄入他人所有之園地或柵欄內非得所有者之同意不得  
 任意追捕

銃器 firearm. 網罟 net; snare. 機械 trap. 各地方最高級具  
 官 the local highest authority. 農商部 the Board of Agriculture and  
 Commerce. 宅地內 on one's premises. 不在此限 except; to be  
 excepted. 證書 certificate. 程式 form. 另表 the attached table. 炸  
 藥 explosives. 毒藥 poison. 劇藥 strong drug. 陷阱 pitfall. 遇有  
 特別情事 under special circumstances. 禁山 preserve; game preserve.  
 陵寢 mausoleum. 公道 highway. 羣衆聚集之地 public resorts. 土  
 地所有者 landowner. 竄入 to intrude into.

## 第四十六課 續

- 第六條 受保護之鳥獸一律禁止狩獵但因研究學術或其他特別情事經警察官署核准者不在此限
- 第七條 狩獵者從事狩獵時須攜帶狩獵證書受該管官署之隨時檢查
- 第八條 狩獵者不得冒用他人之狩獵證書  
狩獵期間每年自十月一日起至翌年三月末日止前項期間如遇有特別情事經警察官署之核准者得延長之但其延長期間不得逾翌年四月末日
- 第九條 違背第一條第二項警察官署所定狩獵器具之種類及限制暨第二條第三條第八條之規定者處二十圓以下之罰金
- 第十條 違背第四條第六條之規定者處十圓以下之罰金
- 第十一條 違背第五條第七條之規定者處五圓以下之罰金
- 第十二條 本法所定屬於警察官署權限之事項在未設警察官署地方由縣知事處理在未設縣知事地方由該管地方長官處理
- 第十三條 遇有特別情事得於一定之區域內不適用本法之規定前項區域由各地最高級長官咨陳農商部指定
- 第十四條 本法自公布日施行

因研究學術 for scientific purposes; for the study of nature. 受該管官署之隨時檢查 to subject to the inspection from time to time by the authority concerned. 狩獵者不得冒用他人之狩獵證書 the certificate shall not be transferable. 延長 to prolong; to extend the period granted. 處.....圓以下之罰金 shall subject to a fine not more than.....dollars. 權限 jurisdiction 縣知事 the district magistrate. 於一定之區域內 within a definite region.

## 第四十七課

## 袁總統尊孔命令

立國之本在於政治而政治新舊之遞嬗恆視學說爲轉移我中國之尊孔子始於漢武帝擴膺百氏表章六經自是學說遂統於一尊顧孔學博大與世推移以正君臣爲小康以天下爲公爲大同其後歷代人主專取其小康學派鞏固君權傳疏諸家變本加厲而專制之威能使舉世學者不敢出其範圍近自國體改革締造共和或謂孔子言制大一統而辨等威疑其說與今之平等自由不合淺妄者流至悍然倡爲廢祀之說此不獨無以識孔學之精微卽於平等自由之真相亦未有當也孔子生貴族專制時代憫大道之不行哀斯民之昏墊乃退而祖述堯舜刪修六經春秋據亂之後爲升平太平之世禮於小康之上進以大同共和之義此其導源遠如顏曾思孟近如顧黃王諸儒多能發明宗旨擇精語詳大義微言久而益著醞釀鬱積遂有今日民主之局天生孔子爲萬世師表旣結皇煌帝諦之終亦開選賢與能之始所謂反之入心而安放之四海而準者本大總統證以數千年之歷史中外學者之論說蓋灼然有以知日月之無傷江河之不廢也惟民國以人民爲主體非任其自由信仰不足以證心理之同前經國務院通電各省徵集多數國民祀孔意見現在尙未覆齊茲據尹昌衡電稱請令全國學校仍行釋奠之禮等語所見極爲正大應俟各省一律議覆到京卽查照民國禮制根據古義將祀孔典禮折衷至當詳細規定以表尊崇而垂久遠值此駸夜兢兢每於古今治亂之源政學會通之故反覆研求務得真理以爲國家強弱存亡所繫惟此禮義廉恥之防欲遏橫流在循正軌總期宗仰時聖道不虛行以正人心以立民極於以祈國命於無疆羣共和於不敵凡我國民共有責焉此令



政治新舊之遞嬗恆視學說爲轉移 the political institution of a country is subject to constant change which is brought about by the teachings of the sages and philosophers. 博 大 comprehensive. 小 康 internal peace. 大 同 universalism. 傳 疏 諸 家 the commentators and exponents. 變 本 加 厲 to push it to an extreme. 大 一 統 而 辨 等 威 to advocate centralization and social distinction. 廢 祀 to abolish the time-honoured sacrifice to Confucius. 貴 族 專 制 時 代 the time when autoocracy was prevailing. 升 平 太 平 national peace and universal peace. 禮 the Book of Rites. 非 任 其 自 由 信 仰 不 足 以 證 心 理 之 同 And unless the people are granted freedom of worship how can we learn the popular sentiments. 仍 行 釋 奠 之 禮 to observe the traditional and valued sacrifice to Confucius. 敲 邪 充 塞 法 守 蕩 然 unsound education and distorted ideas have been prevailing and law thrown to the winds. 不 服 從 disobedience. 無 忌 憚 unscrupulousness. 禮 義 廉 恥 Propriety, Righteousness, Modesty and Shame. 欲 遏 橫 流 在 循 正 軌 if we wish to check the cross currents of evil we should follow the right path. 以 立 民 極 let him be regarded as the guiding star of the nation. 同 有 責 焉 to concern all people throughout the country.

## 第四十八課

## 張謇導淮計畫宣告書

淮之爲患舊矣其歷史變遷前曾撰說茲略就近十年來現狀言之自前清光緒丙午至今災凡五見其費官賑華洋義賑一千餘萬而災猶未已而賑且立窮災本不除民無寧歲淮之必當導治徵特國內之公言且入世界之注線矣嘗於弱冠時薄游淮上略研地理習聞昔日淮黃合流之禍深咎黃徙而不卽治淮之失逆計不治淮則淮亦必有病民之日考前哲治河之書訪每歲淮流之狀丁亥鄭州河決漫溢皖北歸納洪湖淮乃大墊而益不易治（道光己酉六堡之役決黃入清洪澤已被淤墊而猶未若丁亥之甚）由是間歲輒災丙午丁未間卽請端前督設局測量主其事者陰麟斡之圖成而不治所測之域亦不全無如何也而政府費於賑災者則既四百餘萬義賑及外人之賑不與焉清宣統元年江蘇諮議局開會特提導淮議案經全體贊成議決江督復以費絀難之乃請計設立江淮水利公司先就清江浦設局測量預計用款五萬圓由江蘇督撫陸續籌撥用南通師範學校附設之河海工科畢業學生分班開測嗣皖省議會亦援照呈請皖撫撥款辦理當時規畫測線以爲受惠最烈莫如蘇皖而淮之腹在皖尾閭在蘇治水必先治下游蘇以故宜先測蘇竣而及於皖部分一切大定宣統三年正月開測至九月靖江兵變匪亂中輟民國元年三月復以三班續測冀其速竣測六月又以舊測之員十班繼之同時皖亦派員十班分測所有規畫測法及測線道里清繪各成績業經彙要登載報紙西報亦有掇載之者當邀衆鑒現在河身高下流量流

速測竣圖亦尋就此已辦之事實也。惟去害在導與利在墾二者均非借債不行。然欲遠借債之目的必先籌還債之方。還債爲何不外墾利。墾利爲何不外以將來涸出之地與淮有關連沿湖沿河之地。一一釐正繳價升科爲挹注。然則與淮河關連沿湖沿河地畝之平面測量必須趕辦。故現擬借款未成以前先了前項測量之事。測費則蘇已有籌備。但須報告議會。皖省尙須議會議決。此目前之進行也。然此所計祇及蘇皖而治淮必須兼治沂泗。以淮論發源於豫以沂泗論發源於魯。此尙須與魯豫協籌。豫則幹之外亦須治支。魯則不獨引沂泗有歸而已。兼須規及運河（按禹貢浮於淮水達於河。胡氏錐指引說文河作荷。成氏班義述云徐州貢道自淮而泗自泗而荷。然後由荷入濟以達於河。卽此運河也）。要當先治蘇皖。就蘇皖論沂泗不治淮亦不可得。治有須兼治者。有須分治者（理由另詳規畫概要）。合全局而通籌以片言爲扼要。則又宜衡時勢之緩急。分標本之先後。所謂本者則有如詳加勘估。確定入海及分流入江之路線。分別機船人力施工之地段。審造適宜何種之機船。規定應修之閘壩。連勘關係直魯商業運河之工程。此必須工程師聘定而後可措手。次則如分辦兩省沿湖沿河之平面測量。以區定省界。縣界。官地。民地。界及已報領而未墾與已墾而未報升之界。誌圖列冊。復於平面圖內規畫應開支河。溝。漚。及應築圩堤。閘壩之處。規畫設立長淮農業銀行。專供各縣墾戶開濬支河。溝。漚。建設圩堤。閘壩之押借。此必須淮沂勘定第一步工程設施以後而後可措手。照此豫計循序急進。計款須二千萬計。時須五六年。此五六年中如在蘇皖之沂淮流域一千餘里能保不再發生丙午以來災狀。平則治標未可忽矣。

導淮計畫 the Hwaiho Conservancy scheme.  
爲患 to bring about disasters. 賑 relief. 災本 the  
primary causes of the calamitous famines. 導治  
to bring the river under control. 入世界之注線  
beginning to arouse world-wide interest. 淮黃合  
流 the Yellow River overflowed its banks and  
discharged its waters into the Hwai. 逆計 it was  
my prediction. 洪河 the Hungtze River. 墊 to  
be silted up. 六堡之役 the embankments of the  
Yellow River also broke at Lu Po. 設局測量 to  
establish a surveying bureau. 江淮水利公司  
Kiang-Hwai Waterways Development Company.  
籌撥 to appropriate. 河海工科畢業學生 students  
with qualifications in surveying and hydraulic  
engineering. 淮之腹 the main portion of the  
Hwai. 尾閘 its mouth. 下游 the lower reaches  
of a river. 兵變匪亂 the mutiny of the soldiers  
and riot of people. 河身高下 levels of the river  
beds. 流量流速 the volume and velocity of the  
various streams. 去害在導興利在壅 to prevent

future calamities conservancy work must be taken in hand, and to develop the resources of the Hwai regions wide cultivation of the areas is necessary. 不外以將來涸出之地與淮有關連沿湖沿河之地一一釐正繳價升科爲挹注 this is done by demarcating, registering, assessing, selling and putting into cultivation all land or accretion that may be reclaimed on the borders of the Hwai, the Hungtze, Hu and their numerous tributaries. 平面測量 the plane surveying. 沂泗 the Yi and Sze. 引沂泗有歸 to lead the Yi and Sze to their proper channels. 運河 the Grand Canal. 衡事勢之緩急 to consider the prevailing conditions and needs of time. 標本 temporary measures and permanent measures. 確定入海及分流入江之路線 to determine the routes by which the streams are to be led to the sea and to the Yangtze. 機船 人力 dredging machine boats and manual labor. 開壩 sluice and embankment. 押借 to lend money on security.

## 第四十九課 續

所謂標者先濬淮沂近海入運之路以殺其勢 一爲張福引河河現爲淮水入運之路自十三堡洪湖口至碼頭鎮運口止河身甚狹底高與洪湖底等以致水小不甚通流水大不及暢洩全河長三十八里平均姑先以浚深二尺廣一丈計即可通流約去土一萬三千六百八十方 一爲楊莊至西壩廢黃河廢黃河自楊莊以東爲淮水故道河灘淤墊水小時水面與廢黃河底等淮之所以不能復故道也此段計長十里平均姑先以浚深三尺廣一丈計即可通流約去土五千四百方 一爲西壩至安東廢黃河西壩以東河底漸低然河中土硬重重凹凸曲折必須配平取直此段計長六十里平均姑以浚深一尺廣一丈計即可通流約去土一萬八千方此爲可以人力施工者言亦舉以爲例之數蓋減殺淮泗之水須先從事者其西則周家口至駱馬湖約一百餘里沂水入六塘河之路也沂水在蘇省分一幹三支 一卽周家口至駱馬湖爲東偏支流周家口以上河身甚闊傾斜甚大近因駱馬湖淤墊逼水西流邳宿受害最烈今宜疏開駱馬湖上游令沂水直入六塘邳宿之災可減 一爲駱馬湖經丁家嘴錢集至龍溝口 一爲由錢集至武障口此皆六塘河也錢集以西爲總六塘河約一百五十餘里錢集至武障壩爲南六塘河約一百十餘里錢集至龍溝爲北六塘河約百餘里應浚深若干尺廣若干尺計土若干方尙待全圖清出流速流量報告後規畫如其開駱馬上游又浚駱馬湖受多量之沂水而不先規畫下游決壅滯去障礙（沿河灘近多叢植杞柳）則沂水之漲勢必旁溢而不可禦而此數段擇要之疏開皆爲治淮治泗沂應有之工程事固不類駢枝費更無須復出此斟酌於治本必先治標之計劃也願所目營而心構者尙待審

慎不敢即聞於衆不料近來有以此舉爲詬病者東海某甲以爲導淮則東海必爲澤國不如不導山陽某甲亦謂導淮則山陽將爲澤國不如不導此則審不必辨夫治甲之患有兼宜治乙者治丙之患有宜先治甲與乙者試問泗沂自三代即正於淮沿至五代遙遙三千年彼時所謂東海者沈而爲澤乎否乎宋熙寧間金明昌間黃河發淮泗沂亦駭焉馴至明洪武六年後大行寔成河永歟淮至清咸豐六年黃河北徙中間歷歷數百年彼時所謂東海與所謂山陽者沈而爲澤乎否乎如某甲某甲云者黃河北徙以後淮流不暢東海山陽宜有非常之利矣果歲歲豐稔乎丙午以前丙午以後因淮災而受賑之民東海山陽果無一人乎國內國外有人衆耳衆目難掩若以爲淮宜治而審非其人則可也以爲審非其人而並倡言淮不應治可乎否乎審無狀且垂垂老矣以不忍於鄉里游災之慘受任導淮又承江皖兩督公推之盛未敢諉讓而自問工程之學本非專門徒以淮事略有研求又前辦稍有已成之績故略據前此辦法及將來規畫於此以質世之同志冀有以匡教之至於借款必俟國會大定政府穩固乃可籌議此時尙難計及倘得閔才碩畫熱心之士起而願擔此任使可釋肩藏拙則審所馨香以祝斯夕以求者也

#### 附治淮規畫之概要

據測量主任前後陳報擬定

#### 第一章 淮泗沂分治

清河西北有楊莊由此以上之淤黃河爲舊時泗沂所經之道（按禹貢淮沂其又胡氏雖指淮納沂不決淮距海則沂無所歸故必先淮而後沂又導淮自桐柏東會於泗沂東入於海雖指沂入泗

泗入於淮言會者以二水相敵故也入海在今淮浦水經亦云淮水東至廣陵淮浦縣入於海成氏班義述注淮浦在今安東縣西水經泗水篇注泗水又東南逕下邳縣故城西東南流沂水注焉又葛嶧山在邳州西北六里州志俗云距山蓋以其與沂水相距故名是古沂水在邳西成氏班義述引邳州志云沂河舊在邳西一里今其故道爲黃流淤塞水經泗水注泗水又東逕角城北而東南流注於淮成氏班義述角城在今清河縣東南是沂入泗處在今邳州西南泗入淮處在今清河安東之間自上而下則沂入泗泗入淮泗受沂而大足與淮並故云會也與淮水本自殊途自黃奪淮流兼奪沂泗而淮沂泗遂有合併之流向自黃河北徙舊槽高聳淮水不能越黃堤而過而黃堤以北之徐淮海地面遂無淮水相沿到今近六十年矣此六十年中水患源委舊黃以北爲泗沂舊黃以南爲淮而略有泗沂若居今日而規畫江北水利則治之之法淮沂當分而不當合曷言之今日之裏運河（楊莊以下至瓜州）上承沂泗之流至惠濟閘（在馬頭鎮）卽合有張福河之淮水至邵伯更合有高寶湖之淮水淮沂泗三水併流在此裏運河三百餘里之間近世之治淮說一若淮沂泗隨在有連帶性質淮治則沂泗無不治殊不知沂水入江蘇境分支一入沐河一入駱馬下總六塘一至竹籠壩入中運泗水由微山湖通中運河東南下至到老澗分支一入南北六塘至雙金閘分支一入鹽河總計舊黃河以北容受洩瀉沂泗之河身二千一百餘里入海之口二臨洪灌河瀦水之區三微山路馬青伊此中涓滴不及淮水而其被水災區尚不下三萬方里若淮水之屯積區如洪澤高寶等湖被災區如鳳穎亳泗諸地權衡水量倍於泗沂一旦以倍量之水引入泗沂流域證諸往昔揆諸現勢甚不相宜所謂淮沂之應分治者此也



先濬淮沂近海入運之路 to deepen the channels through which the Hwai and Yi flow to the Grand Canal in order that the force of the currents may be weakened. 張福引河 Chang-fa-yin Ho. 十三堡 Shushan-pao. 碼頭鎮 Matuchen. 水小 at low water. 水大 at high water. 平均 on an average of. 楊莊 Yang-chwang. 西壩 Hsi-pa. 廢黃河 the Old Yellow River. 故道 original bed. 安東 An-tung. 重重凹凸曲折 its course so rugged and irregular. 配平取直 to be straightened and levelled. 周家口 Chowchia-ko. 駱馬湖 Loma Hu. 六塘河 Lo-tang Ho. 傾斜甚大 its gradient being rapid. 邳宿 Pichow and Suchien 疏濬 to dredge and widen. 丁家嘴 Tingchiachu. 錢集 Chienchi. 龍溝口 Lungkou-ko. 武障 Wuchan. 總六塘河 Chung (or Main) Lo-tang Ho. 武障壩 Wuchanpa. 尙待全圖清出流速流量報告後規畫 to be decided later when a map giving full details of the nature and velocity of the currents has been compiled. 決壅滯去障礙 to remove silt and obstacles. 東海 Tunghai. 山陽 Shan Yang. 合於淮 to take the same course as the Hwai. 黃河敗淮 the Yellow River forced itself into the Hwai. 大行堤 Tahin embankment. 據測量主任前後陳報擬訂 compiled from Reports of Directors in charge of the Survey Parties. 清河 Chin Ho. 舊槽高聳淮水不能越黃堤而過 the bed it left behind was too high for the Hwai to pass over. 裏運河 Liyuen Ho (Inner Canal). 惠濟開 Weichicha. 邵伯 Shaopei. 高寶湖 Kaopao Hu. 隨在有連帶性質 so closely related to each other. 沐河 Su Ho. 竹籠壩 Chulun Sluice. 微山湖 Weishan Lake. 劉老澗 Liu-laokien. 雙金關 Hsuan-kingcha. 鹽河 Yen Ho. 臨洪 Lin-hung. 灌河 Kwan Ho. 漫水之區 reservoir lakes. 青伊 Chinyi. 鳳 Fengyang. 穎 Yinchow. 亳 Pochow. 泗 Szechow. 流域 basin.

## 第五十課 續

## 第二章治淮應規定道線分注江海

邗溝未開以前淮水無入海之路既開之後入江則取道於天長六合間入海則今日楊莊以下之淤黃河至於雲梯關是也近數十年則淮水僅入江如瓜州三江營是也今若導淮水全部入江則江淮並漲之時宜洩仍虞妨礙論者有謂淮水宜三分入江七分入海其說頗當惟道線所在宜有準據以兩年來測量所得之結果則入江由三江營爲宜入海由灌河口爲宜曷言乎入江宜由三江營也據現時之水流觀之淮水似入裏運河由瓜州入江不知瓜州能洩裏運河低淺之水不能洩裏運河高漲之水蓋當伏秋時江淮並漲淮水至邵伯以下之六閘子蠋虎燈等處與江水抵觸不能南下遂旁洩董家石洋兩溝出三江營三江營之地位在焦山以東通常水位低於瓜州河底亦較瓜州爲底其引淮入三江營之導線卽由蔣壩之三河經小關頭橋等處其間原有航路底亦低下由此進行工省而勢順也曷言乎入海宜由灌河口也雲梯關口高於灌河口順水之性宜於就下惟灌河故爲沂泗入海之口今并以淮似與分治之策爲矛盾然須注意於會處三代時海勢猶近故淮與泗沂會於安東以西今則去古三千餘年海勢遷東大異於昔近人有主張由馬港口北折至嚮水口入灌者有主張由鹽河經五丈河入灌者然嚮水口距海口七十餘里五丈河距海口一百三十餘里距海遠則泄勢緩會水多則流量厚今擬由六套北折至小南河入灌距海僅十餘里并當加濬列子臨洪二口以爲盛漲分殺之備其引淮至馬口港之導線卽由張福河經舊黃

河惟舊河兩隄相距甚遠循河舊漕展寬濬深則沙多易壅而道不適於用不若以黃河之北隄爲南隄於北隄之外水量適宜之地另築一堤堤外土質較堅就用一隄亦省一隄之工至規畫洪湖則須俟下游通流後循龜山至張福河并循歸仁堤至三河口用新機疏濬分湖內爲十字河爲淮之中幹卽爲壅計亦宜如此

### 第三章 沂泗分疏

沂泗分流據今而言悉在徐淮海之邳州宿遷桃源沭陽清河東海灌雲七縣境內凡二千七百餘里（此據已測量者言之）屬於北部者爲薈薇沐河中部爲砂礮六塘等河南部爲中運及楊莊至大關之河鹽河自大關至臨洪直貫南北五丈龍溝以下則灌河直趨海口而尙不免水患者有河而不能適如來水之流量故也地形之低以東海爲甚沐河自新安至青伊湖河長一百七十里此一百七十里中河底高下之差達五丈上流一張瀉若建餅鹽河則南北兩部高而中部低降駱馬之水阻於五花橋一帶非常之淤墊不能直下總六塘蓋河之廢棄不治久矣總計徐淮海河身約占被水區域八十分一若先從舊有各河道較準來水之量配平河底而疏之度濬海口而泄之復爲廣興溝洫爲分水蓄水之計沂泗豈惟不至爲患而已治淮須謀適當之去路近於創始性質治沂泗但修原有之經行確爲因成性質事實固不同也

### 附說五

查淤黃河與灌河之間有所謂套子口者未列測量路線以內此口與沂泗入海極無關係今當往測如地形低而門口深或當舍灌河而出套子口此一說也上游道線自龜山引淮入洪湖之外經

古禹河至蔣壩沿高堰東之二河至老堆頭東北山穿山陽境至龔家營入舊黃河於路程上之比較視前說可近七十餘里於水準上之比較則地面與楊莊至安東之舊黃河底相等而二河之底較低於洪湖底一丈內外路近則施工易用費省以河陽所占山陽之地與將來高寶白馬湖中涸出山陽之地較亦此少而彼多此瘠而彼腴也雖然斬輔喬萊之爭前事可鑒利害輕重尚須與地方明事理者通籌之此一說也介蘇皖之間河流之爲障者無逾睢河桃宿之交則有歸仁隄每當水漲上下游均決鬪甚劇此應由三叉河東行經峨嵋岡穿成子窪至高子鄭倉等處修引河百里合老堆頭導使入淮俾有所歸可以永息民爭而湖田亦可盡出此又一說也爲治標計誠宜先濬張福引河楊莊至西壩及西壩至安東之廢黃河爲倉卒有變之預備安東以下河底較低苟能略泄盛漲即可暫從緩議惟一面即須於洪湖設法疏濬以防墊高之處一洩而盡而皖北諸河底本低於洪湖非盛漲不能越過淮流或有時而中斷也此又一說也瓜清運河直貫淮揚計程六百餘里卽吳之刊溝也其於今日尙稱爲完全水道賴以稻洩淮泗沂之漲而下河各縣藉東岸之涵洞壩閘五十餘座淹則堵閉以防侵灌旱則啓放以資灌溉亦有水利可言近年河底日墊日高水流將涸不亟補救恐僅僅之利亦奪是宜配閘洞之底與全河之底酌節宣之平而爲之濬治揆諸形勢以用機船分段漸疏爲適宜此又一說也

以上係就測局報告比較地勢之高下流量之豐殺始爲規畫能否確定須更與富有學識經驗之工程師周歷履勘而後能審定至柏君烈武所主張由高郵興化鹽城分淮入海之說因昔有斬輔喬萊之爭近又有山陽某甲之說慮無識人借爲鼓吹阻撓之資料故且置之以俟異日之討論

邗溝 Han Kou. 天長 Tienchang. 六合 Lohou. 雲梯關 Yuntekwan 瓜州 Kwachow. 三江營 Shankiangyin. 其說頗當惟導線所在宜有準據 the suggestion is a very commendable one but in determining the routes by which the waters should be led away substantial guidance is necessary. 並漲 to rise contemporaneously. 六開子 Lochatze. 蠍虎壩 Chihhupa. 旁洩 to gush out at. 董家溝 Tungchiakou. 石洋溝 Shiyangkou. 焦山 Chiao-shan. 蔣壩 Chanpa. 三河 San Ho 小關頭橋 Siaoquantu Bridge. 順水之性宜於就下 to obey nature's law water must be led to flow from a higher towards a lower place. 會處 the point where the three rivers meet. 海勢猶近 the sea coast was much more inland than it is now. 北折 to make a northward turn. 鵞水口 Hsangshuikou. 五丈河 Wuchang Ho. 六套 Lotao. 小南河 Siao-nan Ho. 列子口 Litzekou. 以爲盛漲分殺之備 in order to guard against unusually high risings in the rivers. 馬港口 Makongkou. 龜山 Kweishan. 歸仁堤 Kweijinte. 新機 up-to-date machines. 分湖內爲十字河 two channels will have to be dug across the bed of the Hungtsehu in the form of a cross. 爲墾計 for reclamation work. 桃源 Taoyuen. 東海 Tunghai. 薺薇河 Hiangwei Ho. 砂礫河 Shuchang Ho. 大關 Takwan. 鹽河自大關至臨洪直貫南北 the Yen Ho intersects the part between Takwan and Linhung from North to South in a straight line. 五丈龍溝 Wuchanglungkou. 不能適如來水之量故也 owing to its capacity being too small for the waters it has to receive. 新安 Hsinan. 上流一漲瀉若建瓴 when the water in the upper reaches of the river rises the currents rush down with the rapidity of a falling avalanche. 五花橋 Wu-hua-chiao. 近於創始性質 of an initiative character. 奎子口 Taotzekou. 古禹河 Kuyuh. 高堰 Kao Yen. 老堆頭 Laotutu. 龔家營 Kunchiayin. 白馬湖 Pei-Mo-hu. 靳輔齋萊之爭 the dispute between Chenfu and Chao Lai. 利害輕重 the relative advantages and disadvantages. 睢河 Su Ho. 爲障 to offer a great obstacle to. 三叉河 Sancha-ho. 峨嵋岡 Omei Kang. 成子壑 Chentze Hwa. 高子 Kaoize. 鄭倉 Chen Chang. 俾有所歸 to let the waters have a definite course. 爲倉卒有變之預備 as a temporary expedient against emergencies. 涵洞壩閘 reservoirs, levees and sluices. 地勢之高下 the levels of the different localities. 流量之豐殺 the nature of the various currents. 高郵 Kaoyu. 興化 Hsinhua. 鹽城 Yencheng.

英 譯 舉 隅  
TRANSLATION EXERCISES

BOOK I

---

PART I

---

LESSON IV

WHEAT

All sorts of grains grow in the spring and ripen in the fall. But wheat is an exception; it is planted in the 9th, and harvested in the 5th Moon. It likes a dry climate and is found in abundance in North-western China.

With the coming of the gentle south wind in the 3rd or 4th moon of our calendar the blades of wheat begin to look beautiful, and should we happen to take a walk in the field we would see an immense sea of a greenish-blue colour with something moving hither and thither like waves. A grand sight indeed!

---

LESSON IX

WEAPONS

If the strength of a nation depends upon its army, the efficiency of an army depends upon its equipment. With the advance that has been made in manufacture, battles are now fought with guns, which, in point of destructiveness, have no equal. There are fortresses on land and battle-ships on water. As both defensive and offensive weapons are every day becoming more effective, walled cities, bows and arrows are all things of the past, having lost all their usefulness.

## LESSON XI

## EXERCISES

Wu Pu once enquired of Hwa To as to how one could best preserve his health. To his question, he received the following reply; "Man should have exercises so as to aid the process of digestion and give a freer circulation of the blood. Then sickness would be an impossibility. The axis of a door does not become rotten, nor the running stream unwholesome, for the simple reason that they are constantly in motion. Whenever I became sick I would dance about like birds or beasts in order to get well."

Pu followed this advice, and each day gained in health and strength. He reached the age of more than ninety years.

---

## LESSON XIII

## AN EPIDEMIC

During a pestilence the people of a certain village died in rapid succession. "Is there any possible way of stamping out an epidemic?" asked Yao of his teacher. "An epidemic," answered the latter, "is the result of insanitation. Filth in the street, or any stagnant water, is sufficient to cause an epidemic, and mosquitoes, flies, fleas, and bugs are all agents of infection. This is why an epidemic has now become general. To fight an epidemic, therefore, means that we must improve the sanitary conditions in our midst."

## LESSON XVI

## YO CHEN TSE CHUNG

The State of Chi once sent an expedition against Lu for the purpose of making the latter state give up the famous Tripod of Yu. Lu sent an imitation. The people of Chi questioned its genuineness, but Lu maintained that it was the genuine article.

"Let your Yo Chen Tze Chung come," said the former, "and declare its genuineness to us and we will take his word for it."

Thereupon the Duke of Lu called upon Yo to do so.

"Why would you not send them the genuine one?" insisted Yo. "Because I am so fond of it," returned the Duke. "Well, I am fond of my truthfulness," said Yo. With this, he refused pointblank to make the trip as requested.

## LESSON XXI

## YU AND THE FLOOD

In the remotest period, there was a flood which did so much havoc that people could not live in their houses. Emperor Shun, greatly moved, appointed Yu to bring the water under human control. For thirteen years Yu lived away from his home; thrice he passed in front of his house without going in. By faithful devotion and constancy of purpose, and with hands and feet becoming callous, he, at length, succeeded in making artificial canals and rivers to let out the water into the sea. After this the people of China began for the first time to have homes and to enjoy life. Great were his services to mankind.



## LESSON XXIII

## LOVE YOUR YOUNGER BROTHERS.

Yu was kind and gentle. Whenever he came home from school on a vacation, he enjoyed playing with his younger brothers and sisters. One day he came home and found his brother sick in bed. Feeling sad, he sat by the side of the bed for sometime, now citing some stories and then singing some songs to please him.

When he returned to school the next day, he kept on sending letters home enquiring after his health until the brother was fully recovered.

My Dear Brother;

I am very sorry that you were sick abed and could not play with me when I came home yesterday. How are you now? Do you feel any better after taking the medicine? My thoughts are with you always. I intend to ask for leave to come home after school to-morrow and see you.

However, as our house is some distance from the school, I doubt if the school master will grant my request. I hope you will take care of yourself and do everything you can to facilitate your recovery.

Your brother,

Signature, \_\_\_\_\_

Date,

## LESSON XXVI

## A LETTER OF EXCUSE

Siu was very regular. He was always on time at school,—for a year or more, he had never been late one minute. Besides, he was industrious, and all his teachers spoke highly of him.

One day every one was present in the class-room with the exception of Siu. "He has never been late," remarked his teacher. "There is something wrong with him or he would have turned up to-day." This was scarcely said when there came a letter for the teacher, who opened it and found that it was a letter of excuse from Siu.

---

LESSON XXVII

DEAR TEACHER,

I regret to inform you that I was caught in a shower of rain and was wet to the skin while returning home from school last night. I feel dizzy to-day and am not at all well.

Mother has asked me to remain at home and take a little rest. As soon as I am better I will come to school and make up my lessons.

I now write to ask you to excuse me.

Your obedient pupil,

Date. \_\_\_\_\_

---

LESSON XXVIII

## CHEN PING AND THE MEAT

Once upon a time, the people of a certain village killed cattle to offer a sacrifice to the local god of the earth. when the sacrifice was over the meat had to be divided

among themselves, and, for this purpose, they elected Chen Ping head-steward.

Chen Ping was a young man then, but he divided the meat so equally that all concerned were much pleased with him. "If I ever have an opportunity," said he, "to preside over a state in the capacity of a prime minister, I will do to the nation what I have now done with the meat."

He later entered the public service under the Han Dynasty, and was its prime minister for upwards of ten years, during which time peace prevailed throughout the country and the people prospered. Every one therefore sang his praise.

---

### LESSON XXX

#### A NECROMANCER

Once upon a time a necromancer took up his seat on a cross-road to tell fortunes to the passers-by.

His son suddenly ran up and informed him that his house had been robbed and deprived of its contents. This evidently embarrassed him to no small degree. One of the crowd jokingly said, "Now, Sir, you have been here day after day telling fortunes for others, and yet you have been totally blind to the evil omen which has fallen upon your own house. How are you going to explain this?" The necromancer was not able to make any reply.

---

### LESSON XXXIV

#### A LAKE

All the water on the surface of the earth takes its rise in small streams or brooks, which unite to form rivers, with the sea as their final destination. A basin that stands in the way is likely to collect the water that flows into it. This reservoir we call a lake. A large lake has an area of

several hundred *li*. If we sail on such a lake, we can see nothing but an endless expanse of water around us, making us feel as if we were sailing upon an ocean.

Some lakes abound in fish and turtles; others produce water-chestnuts and lotus roots. Lakes afford great facilities for irrigation, hence land bordering upon a lake produces the most rice.

By building embankments around the shallow part of a lake and letting out the water by locks, we can have some arable land, which in China is called "Hu-tien" *i. e.* "land reclaimed from a lake." Its soil is extremely fertile and capable of yielding abundant crops.

---

#### LESSON XXXVI

##### CHINESE INK

The soot, gathered after the burning of a piece of pine or kindred wood, mixed with some cohesive substance, moulded and dried, is the Chinese ink. Dip it into the water and grind it on an ink stone and you soon have the common writing fluid. We wet a brush with it to write characters. If the task of grinding the ink at the time of writing is unpleasant, it is better to have the grinding done at leisure and keep the fluid in either a bottle or a box. A box filled with cotton which soaks up the ink and renders it possible to be carried around without shaking the fluid out, is a good device.

---

#### LESSON XXXIX

##### BOOK-KEEPING

A student, expensive by name, is in the habit of spending money recklessly. His money never lasts long and he is often obliged to borrow from others to meet his needs,

## TRANSLATION EXERCISES

Hung, another student in the same school, asks him, "What have you spent your money for and how is it that you have spent so much?" "I do not know," answers Expensive. "But it is hard to obtain money," says his friend, "and it is a great mistake not to be frugal. We should keep an account of what we receive and spend and cut off all the unnecessary items."

By taking this advice, Expensive finds it possible to reduce his current expenses.

## FORM OF AN ACCOUNT.

		Dr.	Cr.
1/1	To Balance from last month	87 Cash	Cash
1/6	„ Cash from home	300	
1/6	By Barber		30
1/6	„ Laundryman		42
1/10	„ Vermicelli		18
1/13	„ Barber		30
1/13	„ Laundryman		56
	„ Slate pencil		8
1/16	„ 3 2-cent stamps		60
1/19	To Cash from home	300	
1/19	By Cakes		6
1/20	„ Barber		30
1/20	„ Laundryman		42
1/24	„ 1 Chinese ink		40
1/24	„ Cakes		12
1/24	„ Writing paper		24
1/27	„ Barber		30
1/27	„ Laundryman		56
1/29	„ 1 Chinese pen		40
	Balance on hand		163
		<u>687</u>	<u>687</u>

## LESSON XLI

## THE LARGE FISH IN THE SEA

Once upon a time Tsen Kuo Chung, Prime Minister of the State of Chi, was given the principality of Hsieh. He was about to fortify it and make it his home when one of his counsellors or "guests" remonstrated with him and said; "Have you ever heard of the large fish in the sea? He is so large that he cannot be caught with either a net or a hook; but when he is upon the dry land ants are able to control his destiny. Chi is to Your Honour what the water is to the fish. So long as you govern Chi wisely, it will continue to be powerful and there is nothing you need fear. If you, however, should permit Chi to be dismembered, you may build a walled city around Hsieh as high as the sky and the result will be just as bad for you." "Excellent," cried Tsen Kuo Chung, and he at once gave up the idea of fortifying Hsieh.

---

## LESSON XLIV

## MR. STUPID AND HIS HILL

The house of Mr. Stupid, an old man of ninety years, was behind the North Hill. Finding that the Hill was in his way, one day he led his sons and grandsons, with baskets and hoes, to raze it to the ground. Mr. Clever of the Crooked Stream laughed at him and persuaded him not to do it. "See! How foolish you are!" said he. "With the few more years you may live and the little strength you now command, you can hardly expect to damage the hill to a hair's breadth."

“Oh! no,” cried Stupid; “I may die, but my sons will be here, and, after them, my grandsons, great-grandsons, and so on. The work will be continued basket after basket, and since the Hill will not be increased in height proportionately, I do not see how we can help but raze it to the ground.”

---

## LESSON L

### TREAT YOUR SERVANTS WELL

Once upon a time, To Yang Ming was magistrate of Pung Che. He brought no family with him and sent one of his servants home with a letter to his son, as follows:—

“You will no doubt find it difficult to perform all the household work yourself. So, I send the bearer to help you gather fuel and carry water. He is a beloved child of some father and mother. *Let's treat him decently.*”

The Duke of Hanwei, once paid 100 taels for a jade cup. At a dinner party, the cup was placed on a table. Accidentally one of his servants went against the table; down came the cup and was broken into pieces. All presently were greatly excited. The servant in question prostrated himself before the Duke ready to receive what was his due. The Duke, however, appeared as natural as ever.

With a smile, he said to his guests as follows:—

“There is no article that will last forever. That it will be broken is only a matter of time!”

Turning to the servant, he said, “You did it through accident, you did not mean to do it.” And he refused to punish him.

## PART II

### LESSON I

#### THE CHINESE CALENDAR AS COMPARED WITH THE FOREIGN CALENDAR

The time occupied by the earth in making its journey around the sun is roughly estimated at 365 days. This has been adopted by various nations as the basis of a civil year consisting of twelve months. As the number of days in a year does not coincide with the time occupied by the earth's revolution a process of intercalation has been devised in order to make up what surplus there is.

Our old calendar gave a large month 30 days and a small month 29 days; our year fell short of the time occupied by the earth's revolution by 10 days and a fraction. Thus in less than three years, we had a surplus of twenty-nine days which were incorporated into an extra month, giving the year in question thirteen months. This extra month was called an intercalary month.

The calendar of the West divides the year into months of 30 or 31 days, with the exception of the month of February, which has only 28 days. Thus the year ends before the earth completes its revolution by about 6 hours, leaving a surplus of 24 hours in every four years, hence an extra day is added to the month of February as the 29th day in the 4th year which they call a leap year.

Our old calendar is in fact regulated by the revolution of the moon around the earth so that each new and full moon shall fall, respectively, on the first and fifteenth of the month; hence it is a lunar calendar. The calendar of the



West which is regulated by the revolution of the earth around the sun is therefore a solar calendar. The solar system has been adopted throughout Europe and America, and from the first year of our Republic we have likewise adopted it.

---

#### LESSON IV

##### THE YELLOW RIVER

The Yangtze is the largest river in China; the Yellow River the second largest.

The Yellow River takes its rise in Kokonor and empties itself due east through North China into the sea. Its water is muddy and its current turbulent. For the most part it is unnavigable. In point of usefulness, therefore, it is also second to the Yangtze.

Throughout its upper course, the river winds its way through hills and mountains and abounds in rapids. Its current is very swift until it leaves the Lung Meng Pass. Here the water finds an immense basin to cover several hundred li in extent. It gradually loses its force and instead of carrying the sand and gravel with it into the sea, a layer of sediment is deposited at the bottom each year. Thus the bed of the river is constantly rising, and embankments along its banks are increased in height proportionately, with the result that the land on each side of its banks is much lower than the river bed itself.

In the time of the spring and autumn floods, the water, finding no sufficient outlet through the lower course, often bursts the dam and converts the country along the

banks of the river into a lake, damaging farms and houses and carrying away people and cattle. This is, indeed, a sad event.

This river has been a curse to China from times immemorial. It has been found necessary to maintain a number of officials for the conservancy of this great waterway. The responsible authorities, however, not only refuse to root out the evil but also to take timely precautions. They will not do anything until a breach is made through one of the embankments, and even then, content themselves with half measures. Worse still, some of them even welcome a disastrous event as a means to gain their personal end. This is why the "River Evil" is not abated to the present day.

---

## LESSON VIII

### COMMERCIAL TREATIES

Since nations live side by side with one another, questions have come up where their interests meet, and because of these questions treaties have become necessary. A treaty cements the ties of friendship between the states parties to it, and safeguards their respective rights and privileges.

Under the presumption that we were a world-wide empire, we used to look down upon all aliens as barbarians unworthy to have anything to do with us. As a result of the defeat we received at the hands of the English, we made our first commercial treaty with them in the 22nd year of Tao Kuang. The precedence thus established has been

availed of by many other nations, and, during the past sixty years, more treaties have been made, with the result that "the Treaty Powers" now number seventeen. For the first time Chinese legations were established in the first year of Kuang Hsu, at certain foreign capitals to maintain our foreign relations, and consulates in ports where there were numerous Chinese residents; to look after our commercial interests. In turn, other nations have sent their diplomatic and consular officers to China.

Our Government having maintained a civilization independent of other nations, had at first little or no knowledge of the world. She tried to exclude every foreigner that came to China, and it was only at the point of the bayonet that China was thrown open, hence our first treaties were not made to our best advantage.

Our people, too, were in the habit of treating foreigners with contempt. Cases of infringements of treaty stipulations and unfriendly acts were of frequent occurrence, and it was not long before the foreign nations had an occasion to appeal to arms. After repeated defeats, we were obliged to accept what terms were dictated to us, to the disadvantage of both government and nation.

---

## LESSON IX

### COMMERCIAL TREATIES, continued

In Europe or America treaties are made for the purpose of securing to the parties concerned equal rights or privileges. In matters of immigration, residence, or tariffs, reciprocity is their policy.

In China, we have to-day forty ports open to foreign trade and commerce, and missionaries and persons engaged in mission works are permitted to travel all over the country. Foreign offenders in China are amenable only to the jurisdiction of their own consuls but Chinese residing abroad are subject to the local courts. Foreign goods entering China pay a 5% ad valorem duty; Chinese imports to foreign countries are taxed under tariffs adopted without reference to China.

These cases, however, are all subjects of treaty stipulations sanctioned by the contracting parties. Aside from them, we have instances where Chinese in foreign employ, native Christian converts, and Chinese stores registered in the name of a foreigner, have been accorded undue protection, thereby enabling them to commit offences against the Chinese law with immunity. There are also instances where unjust and cruel laws have been enacted, either subjecting the Chinese residents to hardships or looking to their total exclusion. All these acts are not sanctioned by treaties.

---

## LESSON X

### COMMERCIAL TREATIES, continued

Thus we have seen how we have suffered since we opened our country to foreign commerce. It is, however, both an impossibility and absurdity to advocate a return to the old policy of seclusion now. Every land has its surplus and wants. It is by international commerce that a general diffusion of commodities is made possible. What is true of

commodities is also true of knowledge, for intercommunication between nations broadens their views and introduces new culture and civilization. International commerce is therefore a twofold benefit.

In conclusion, the blame for what we have suffered cannot be entirely laid to the door of the foreigner. Chinese judges and customs officers have been noted for their unjust and discriminate acts, giving the foreigner a good cause for complaint. Education in China is far from general, and, so far as the indignities go, to which our fellow-countrymen have been exposed at foreign ports, the cause lies, in certain cases, at least, with themselves.

Unless we reform our government institutions, improve the moral standard of the nation, and increase the efficiency of our army and navy, we cannot maintain our proper position in the family of nations.

---

## LESSON XXI

### THE WEST LAKE

Within our Empire there are 31 different places known as "West Lake" but, in point of pretty scenery, the West Lake of Hangchow towers above the rest.

The central part of the lake is commonly called the Ku Shan Lu, from an islet of that name (孤山路) in the heart of the lake. Below this islet, is the S'u Ti, a causeway built by Su Tung Po, spanned by six bridges, stretching from South to North and dividing the Lake into two, the Eastern or Outer Lake and the Western or Inner Lake. The best sight in the former is the Three Pools, the Seal

of the Moon (三潭印月) and, in the latter, the Jade-Girdle Bridge (玉帶橋).

North of the Lake is the Pei Shan Lu or the Northern Hill Section. Here one finds the famous Po Shih Pagoda, and the Well at Kuok Ling; here the singular beauty of the Lin-yin, the steepness of the Tao-kuang, and the impenetrable forests of the Three Tien-lis, with gorges so rocky, streams so delicious, and cliffs and rapids so numerous, all combine to make the effect so lovely that the eye cannot follow the many wonders here presented.

South of the Lake is the Nan-Shan-Lu. The Nan Ping Range is a sort of screen to the Lake while the Thunder Peak is a Chinese brush standing on top of the hill. The great Chien-tang River comes gradually into view as one climbs up the Nan Ko Peak. On the Phenix Range is the Dragon Well which has transferred its name to the entire slope famous for tea. Here the place abounds in high precipices and waterfalls. The water that takes its rise here finally makes a conjunction with the Chiu Chi, which receives its supply from 18 mountain streams. This is the grandest waterfall we ever saw.

The country bordering on the Lake abounds in monuments of historic value, dating back to the Southern Sung Dynasty. The tombs of Yueh Fei and Ling Ho Chen are probably the most famous. In the midst of these ancient monuments, stand the more recent memorial temples of the great statesmen of the Manchu Dynasty, such as Tseng Kuok Fan, Tso Tsung Tang, Pung Yu Ling, Li Hung Chang, and others. They rival each other in architectural splendour and judicious arrangements. Into these, streams of sight-seers flock all the year round.

## LESSON XXV

## CREDIT

An able-bodied man should be able to make his own living. It is a disgrace to be unable to make a living or to become a public charge. No business man, however, can make anything out of nothing. When he finds his capital insufficient, he is often obliged to borrow before he can expect to make profits.

In an ordinary credit transaction, a written instrument is always required which must specify the rate of interest and the time of re-payment. Thus in case of non-payment, in part or whole, when the instrument of credit matures, the creditor is in a position to enforce his claim.

Credit should be regarded as an emergency measure only, for it does not pay to go on borrowing forever. Before contracting a debt we should be certain as to when and where we may receive an equal amount of money to meet the obligation. To borrow without such a knowledge means that we shall not be able to pay when due. What excuse can we make when the creditor presents the note for payment? Fortunate, indeed, if he will not press his claim; but to lose one's credit is a fatal mistake to commit.

As to the use of our name to obtain credit for others, we should be careful, before giving our consent, to satisfy ourselves whether the person in whose behalf the loan is made is likely to disappoint us or whether we are able to pay for him if necessary. Otherwise we cannot help but disappoint our friend when he disappoints us. We cannot be too careful.

## LESSON XXXII

## THE JEWS

If the Western nations owe their civilization, for which they are noted, to their religion, it is the Jews that have given them the founders of the religion in both Moses and Jesus. The Jews, therefore, may be said to have been the most civilized race of the world.

Again, if commerce has been the life of the financial greatness of the West, it has been agreed on all sides that the Jews are the greatest commercial people. They, therefore, may be said to have been the most influential people, too.

In spite of all this, however, the Jews have been scattered all over the world ever since their country was wiped out of existence. Wherever they go they have been looked down upon and have been trampled upon. If they have an occasion to go to court with natives, they get anything but justice, for the reason that both judges and lawyers discriminate against them as a despised race.

The fate of the Russian Jews is still more appalling. If the Russians are in a happy state of mind, they confine themselves to stealing their property; when they are angry, they burn down their dwellings, kill them and seize all their savings and belongings. Acts of violence on the part of Russian children toward a Jew, provoke no rebuke from their parents or guardians because they see nothing wrong in them. When peasants are the authors of such acts, the authorities likewise take no steps to restrain them, for they, too, see nothing improper in them. Take, for instance, the recent case that took place in the 29th year of Kuanghsu,



when there was a riot in a certain part of Russia. Thousands upon thousands of the resident Jews were persecuted, driven away from their homes, and a great number of them died during their wandering life.

Just think for a moment the fate that has befallen a race without a country ! Let us be warned !

---

### LESSON XXXV

#### LU TZE JU

Lu Tze Ju, alias Liang Cha, had undergone a thorough military training before he was employed as an official in Kaifengfu, Honan. Tien Wen Chien was at that time Viceroy of the Province and was well known for his rigorous discipline. The provincial authorities, both civil and military, including, respectively, the Si's and Taotais, and the General and Brigadier-Generals, all held themselves ready to do his bidding.

One day Viceroy Tien gave Ju instructions to proceed to Chung Mau (中牟), to deprive its magistrate, a Mr. Li, of his seal of office and to take charge of the office in his stead. He went under disguise, was clad in garments of cheap material, wore a straw hat, and rode on a donkey.

On arriving at the district in question, he met hundreds of old farmers who leaned on each other as they walked. "Having come from the provincial capital," asked they, "do you know the Mr. Lu who, we understand, is coming to relieve our present magistrate?" Ju, in turn, asked them for their reasons in seeking the information and was informed that as the man was an ideal official they did not wish to see him go away;

A few more li brought Ju to a crowd of Chinese literary men all clad in their uniforms, who had gathered evidently to discuss some question. "An ideal official," said one. "What a pity! Let us state our grievances to Mr. Lu when he comes." "No," interrupted another; "the order comes from His Excellency Tien, and even though there were ten Messrs. Lu, what could they do? Furthermore; Mr. Lu is coming to take our man's official position; can we expect him to give up his own interests for the sake of the poor man?"

Ju was greatly moved but said nothing and went on. At length he came to the magistrate's yamen. Here he was met by Mr. Li, the magistrate, who was quite a gentleman and who bowed to him and asked him to come in. "The Official Seal," said he, "has been ready for you for some time."

Ju returned his bow and said; "You do not look to me like a spendthrift; besides, you have earned a good reputation among the scholars and the people; but why is there a deficit in the treasury under your charge, especially since you have not been in charge long?"

"I am a native of Yunnan, which is thousands of li from here," replied Li. "I left my mother at home to travel and went to Peking. This was ten years ago. When I received my appointment to Chung Mau, I advanced to myself my salary in order to send for my mother. For this, I have been denounced and I have only myself to blame." When he said that, tears came to his eyes.

"I have been exposed to excessive heat," said Ju. "Please give me a hot bath." With this, he left the magistrate to go into the bath room. He pondered hard

over the situation while bathing, but to no avail. All on a sudden, he struck the water in the tub and declared to himself that man should free himself of the ties of Usage.

Glad now in his official costume, he went to take leave of Li who was greatly surprised and asked where he was going. "To the provincial capital," was his reply. Li gave him the seal but he would not take it. "Don't get yourself into trouble on my account," implored Li. Bang! he threw the seal on the floor. "You don't know me," said he in a loud voice. And he left the Yamen. The whole community went out to see him off, many of them burning incense as he passed by their homes.

---

### LESSON XXXVI.

#### LU TZE JU, continued

Having arrived at Kaifengfu, Ju made his first calls on the Provincial Treasurer and Judge and informed them of the reason for his return. Both of them told him that they thought he had been crazy.

The next morning, Ju called at the Viceregal Yamen where both the Provincial Treasurer and Judge had arrived ahead of him. Before his card had time to be presented, there came an order for him to come in. His Excellency Tien received him with a very stern countenance. Below the Viceroy, were seated on both sides, the Treasurer, the Judge, the Taotais, and other lesser civil and military officers, numbering in all a dozen or more men. Looking at Ju askance, the Viceroy asked: "What do you come here for, instead of remaining at your post?"

"To make a report, Sir," replied he.

"But where is your seal of office?" demanded his excellency.

"It is in Chung Mau," answered Ju.

"Whom have you left in charge of it?" interrogated Viceroy Tien.

"Mr. Li, the magistrate" was the reply.

This made the Viceroy smile sneeringly. Looking around him, he asked, "Have you seen one who has been sent with instructions to deprive another official of his seal of office do what this man here has done?" "No," replied those to whom the question was addressed.

The Treasurer and the Judge both arose from their seats. By way of an apology, they stated: "That we have here a crazy man is evidence of lack of discipline on our part. We would request your excellency to denounce us also to the Government and to turn this man over to us that we may look into the matter and ascertain whether he has been prompted by feelings of friendship in the premises and if necessary make an example of him so as to warn others."

"But I am a poor man," observed Ju, "I have come to this province for the purpose of seeking an official appointment. When I received my appointment to Chung Mau I was so overwhelmed with joy that I wished I could be in my court attending to my business the very night of my appointment. However, when I arrived in the district, I found out the actual relationship in which Mr. Li, the magistrate, stood with the people and the literati there. I saw the man and was satisfied as to the cause of the deficiency in his office. All these things, I submit, are new to your excellency, hence I have come here to make

them known to you. If your excellency should be of opinion that the man is entitled to no further consideration at your hands under these circumstances, I'll go now and take charge of the office, which, I think, is not too late. Tens upon tens of officials who hang around this Yamen are men who have sought in vain to obtain an official appointment. Were it not for the reasons enumerated, how could a man in my position have ventured to go against your excellency's wishes?" His Excellency made no reply. The Treasurer and the Judge directed Ju, by a look, to withdraw from the audience room. This he did, without bowing to the viceroy. However, he had hardly gone beyond the place beneath the eaves before the viceroy was calmed down and went down the steps to call him back.

After he returned, His Excellency Tien removed his official hat with the first-class button on it and placed it on Ju's head with the following remark; "A fine fellow! You are entitled to the hat. I would have cashiered a worthy official but for you. However, my memorial to the Throne has already been sent and what can we do?"

"How long has it been sent?" asked Ju, "Five days, now, and the fastest pony cannot overtake it," said the viceroy. "But I used to cover a distance of 300 li a day when young," said Ju, "and if your excellency wishes me to overtake it, I can do so." The permission was given and he disappeared. In five days he returned with the memorial in question.

The magistrate of Chung Mau was permitted to remain at his post but Ju had made a name for himself throughout the empire on account of the instance above narrated.

## LESSON XXXVII.

## THE LOCUST

No insect does more harm to vegetation than the locust. It is an insect of North China and is noted for its devastation, particularly during a drought season.

Locusts are migratory. They fly in an immense cloud, devouring all vegetation and devastating the whole country, as they go. Because of the harm they do, the general belief among the Chinese of ages ago was that they were gods. They did nothing towards fighting them or killing them but permitted them to go on with their work of destruction.

In the 4th year of Kai Yuen of the Tang Dynasty, great swarms of locusts were found in the Province of Shantung. The people there worshipped them and offered sacrifices to them, permitting them to devour up everything green before their own eyes.

In a memorial to the emperor on the situation, Yao Chung observed: "Locusts are afraid of man and we can rid the country of them without trouble. Since every bit of arable land is owned by some individual, he ought to do everything he can to save his own interests if called upon by the government to do so. I suggest that lights be kept up in the farms, surrounded by holes dug into the ground and by burning and burying we may hope to annihilate all of them."

At his instance, censors were sent out as Anti-Locust Commissioners to carry on a campaign against the insect in their respective districts. The result was that 140 bushels of locusts were killed.

The public opinion of the time, however, was decidedly against this movement. The emperor hesitated and sought the advice of Yao Chung on the subject. "Locusts have invaded every part of the land," said he to the emperor. "Every day will see an increase in their numbers. The people of Honan and Hopeh have saved nothing for a bad year and failure of crop may mean that a large number of them will be driven away from their homes for want of food, when the peace of the empire will be greatly endangered." The emperor was in sympathy with the suggestion, when Lu Huai Sheng remarked as follows: "No catastrophe which was the will of Heaven ever permitted of human control. Besides, the destruction of so many insects is a sin against the Nature of Heaven. I trust you will reconsider your decision."

"But locusts are already numerous," interrupted Chung. "Let them alone now and every green thing will be gone. In that case how about our people? Whatever misfortune we may incur on account of the destruction of insects in order to save human lives, the responsibility lies entirely with me and not you."

The locust problem in that year was soon at an end.

---

## LESSON XL

### THE WRITTEN LANGUAGE

By means of words, men exchange their thoughts, but for the benefit of a distant friend or for future use words have to be reduced into forms of writing.

- We read to-day the thoughts of the ancients although we are born long after them. We record the acts of those

men and women in whose midst we live. Certain things we circulate far and wide and certain things we preserve for the generations to come. In no case can we do anything toward the improvement of our civilization without some form of writing. A written language is, therefore, a valuable instrument of civilization.

In the remotest time in our history, records were kept by knotted strings. At the present day, the Maotze and other primitive races still keep their records by a system of cuts which they make with a knife into trees and which they are able to read by their varying length, width, or peculiar shapes. Both these systems fall short of a language.

Our own system and the Egyptian system are the oldest known writings of the world. They both began as picture writings, i.e., by drawing pictures of objects to be represented. The picture writing seems to have been the mother of all the languages now in use by the different nations of the world. It is only through ages of developments and changes that each system has attained its peculiar character. The more numerous the changes have been, the less perceptible are the analogies.

Words are divided into two general classes: the ideographic and phonetic. Our language is largely ideographic. It has tens of thousands of characters. The ones in daily use, however, number several thousand only. It is the most complicated system. After the picture writing, we have had the ancient writing, the Big Seal Character, and the Small Seal Character. The forms now in use are known as the Model Hand, the Running Hand, and the Rapid Running Hand.



All the European and American languages are phonetic, taking their root from either the Egyptian or its offspring, the Hebrew. They have alphabets of letters representing sounds, which though few in number—as they do not exceed one hundred in any language—can form thousands of words through combination and derivation. Their use is more simple. Their alphabets are commonly called Roman alphabets.

The Japanese is a language originally derived from us, but more recently they have adopted a new system, an alphabet of 48 signs, or characters (called in Japanese *カタ*). The words they form are both phonetic and ideographic. It resembles the Roman alphabet in many respects. Chinese characters, however, are still in use.

---

## LESSON XLII

### SHIH HUANGTI OF TSIN

The China of the three Dynastic Periods of Hsia, Shang, and Chou was a land of feudalism, each of the feudal lords being a sovereign ruler of his own domain, although subject to the orders of the Son of Heaven. Tradition has it that at the conference held at Tu Shan by King Yu, there were present 10 000 feudal lords with “silk and jade in hands.” This number was reduced to three thousand in the Shang Dynasty and again to one thousand and seven hundred at the beginning of the Chou dynasty. During its decadence, the feudal lords waged wars among themselves and through successive conquests and annexations, there were in the closing days of the dynasty, only seven states.

Shih Huangti of Tsin, having conquered the other six states, abolished all the remains of the ancient feudal institutions and divided his empire into thirty-six provinces, each governed by a governor, a general, and a superintendent. While several attempts have been made on different occasions, by later rulers to re-establish the feudal system, the provincial form of government still obtains in China to-day with little or no change, since its first inauguration about 2,000 years ago.

The task of welding the six states into the united China having been completed, the army of Shih Huangti under Meng Tien, his general, was free to invade the Tartar land in the north. A large territory called the "Domain of the Honan" was now added to China in the form of 44 new districts and, to keep out the Hsiung Nu from this territory, a continuous wall was built from Ling Chu to Liu Tung. Awed by his greatness, the chieftain of the Tartars removed their tents further north, and for twenty years or more refrained from sending their herd south.

Under orders from the emperor, Meng Tien also built a great military road from Chiu Yuan to Kan Choan, a distance of eighteen hundred li, and, in the course of the work, many a mountain was tunnelled and many a basin filled.

When peace was completely restored in the north, his Empire began to extend southward; Nan Yueh became a part of China and was divided into three new provinces.

While he was capable and enterprising, and had gained a military renown hitherto unequalled, Shih Huangti was extravagant and wilful. Taking great pride in architectural splendour, he caused many palaces to be built, of which the Han Yang and Ah Fuang were the most famous. Besides, he made visits to Tai Shan and Liang Fu, to "declare the mountains sacred," and besides, several sea journeys in quest of fairies, costing the nation an incredible amount of money.

To show his antipathy to those who had heaped criticisms upon his head, he ordered all classics to be burned and the Confucian Scholars to be buried alive. Because of the remonstrances Fu So, his eldest son and heir, made with him on this occasion, he banished the former to Shan Chung. When he died, his second son, Fu Hai, seized the vacant throne and became emperor. The new emperor was completely under the influence of Chao Ko, a eunuch, and was a worse tyrant than his father. His rule could no longer be tolerated by the people. Chen Sui and other robber chiefs soon raised the standard of rebellion and the Tsin Dynasty was overthrown.

---

## LESSON XLIII

### COMMERCE

As the various countries in the world differ from each other in geographical position and climatic conditions, so they differ in their products. And since their citizens possess different standards of ability and skill, they also

differ in their manufactures. In many cases, the surplus of one country is the wants of another, hence the necessity of interstate commerce.

Ports in our country open to the commerce of the world are Treaty Ports. Native goods sent abroad are exports, and foreign goods brought into the country, imports.

By comparing the imports of one country with its own exports we note two principal points of contrast. Rich is the state whose exports exceed imports and poor is she that imports more than she exports. Again, a nation whose imports consist of more raw than manufactured products and exports, of more manufactured than raw products, cannot help but become wealthy; when the order is reversed her financial decline is certain.

Now let us study the balance of our foreign trade. Our exports barely come up, in value, to one half of our imports. Besides, our exports consist principally of raw silk, tea, beans, cotton, and fur products which are all raw materials with the exception of tea, while our imports of piece-goods, woollen goods, and hardware are all manufactured products. Such is the net result of our foreign trade in spite of our area and population. It is evident that the industrial inactivity among our people has been the immediate cause of this commercial decline. Furthermore, opium which constitutes a major portion of our import trade is largely responsible for our national poverty and weakness. The opium evil is the greatest evil that has ever existed.

## LESSON XLVII

## CHOU YA FU

Once upon a time Han Wen Ti was the emperor of China when the Hsiung Nu made constant raids upon the Chinese frontier. To provide against these Huns, Liu Li, Secretary of the Clan Court, was made the commanding General of the garrison at Pa Shang, Hsu Li, Marquis of Chu Tsu, the commanding General of the garrison at Ki Meng, and Chou Ya Fu, Governor of Ho Nu, of the garrison at Si Liu.

The emperor one day came to inspect the garrisons in person. He visited Pa Sheng and Ki Meng first and at both places he drove right into the barracks and the commanders and the lesser officers rode out to meet him and to see him off.

He now went to Si Liu. The soldiers there were all clad in armours, with weapons shining and arrows in their quivers. The imperial bodyguard arrived but was unable to gain admittance. "His Majesty," said they, "is due here shortly."

"In the Army," answered the lieutenant, "it is the orders of the commanding officer and not the decrees of the emperor that we obey."

Shorly after this, the emperor arrived. He, too, was not able to gain admittance, until a messenger had been sent with the imperial sceptre to announce to the General the arrival of the emperor to inspect the garrison, whereupon Ya Fu gave orders to open the gate. The sentry, however, respectfully approached the imperial horseman with the following remark: "By a military order of our General, no galloping is allowed within this

encampment," and thereupon the emperor drew his reins and went on slowly.

They soon reached the General's quarters. Ya Fu with a sword in hand, made a bow to the emperor. "A soldier in arms," said he, "is not required to kneel down, and may I therefore be permitted to present myself before your majesty with a military salute." The emperor, greatly moved, returned the salute by leaning himself on the stretcher of his carriage. He also informed the general, through a messenger, that he was highly pleased with him and his men.

After the inspection, the imperial party took its departure. As soon as they were outside of the gate, the courtiers made no further attempt to conceal their astonishment. "Look," said the emperor, "he is the ideal general. We have seen nothing but a child's play at both Pa Shang and Ki Meng. It will be no surprise to me to hear at any time that the generals there have been taken by surprise. But as to Ya Fu, who ventures to storm his position?" He continued to commend Ya Fu for some little time.

In about a month's time thereafter, all the three garrisons were withdrawn, when Ya Fu was made Field-marshal.

---

## LESSON XLVIII

### THE MING INSURGENTS

During the closing days of the Mings, the people of China were impoverished by excessive taxation, and bandits rose in different parts of the country, Li Chu Chen and Chang Hsien Chung being the most notorious.

Li Chu Chen, a native of Mi Chi, was also known as General Chong, as he was fond of styling himself thus. One day he received a crushing defeat at the hands of Governor-General Chen Chi Yu, and sought shelter in the Chu Hsiang Chasm. This chasm, some 40 li in extent and enclosed by steep mountains, was in fact a prison, for there was no retreat. It was a great military blunder that the insurgents moved hither. The people in the neighbourhood blocked the entrance by stones, and the insurgents soon ran out of provision. Chu Chen, by way of a stratagem, asked permission to capitulate, which was readily granted by the Governor-General. But no sooner had the insurgents been permitted to come out of the pass, than they began to make onslaught, laying waste all the seven districts through which they passed.

On another occasion, he was besieged by the Imperialists in the Yu Fu Mountain. He saw no hope for himself and was about to hang himself when through some remiss on the part of the besieging army he made good his escape through Yun-Chung into Honan. Here hundreds of thousands of the hunger-stricken people of Honan joined his standard, and it was no longer possible for the Imperial army to check his advance.

He made the capital of Shensi, Sianfu, his headquarters and assumed the dynastic title of Yung Chong. Upon the fall of Taiyuenfu, the road to Peking was laid open to him. Emperor Hui Chong having committed suicide by hanging himself, Chu Chen seized the vacant throne.

General Wu San-kuei of the Chinese garrison at Shanhaikuan, however, surrendered himself to the Manchus

and led their army into the pass. The Manchus routed the army of Chu Chen, who fled into Shensi. Subsequently he came to Hsiang Yang and went into the Chu Kung Mountain. Here he was knocked down by the villagers and died with a broken skull.

Chang Hsien Chung, a native of Fu Sze, was a highway robber but gave himself up to Hsung Wen Chang (a viceroy of the Mings). He was permitted to live in Koo Chen, maintained there an army of his own, made the government feed his men, but refused to obey orders. Every silent observer knew that he was only waiting for an opportunity to raise the standard of rebellion, but Wen Chang paid no serious attention to the situation.

In the seventeenth year of Tsung Ting he captured Wuchang by assault and drowned Hwa Kuai, Prince of Chu, in the river. From Wuchang he went into Szechuan, captured Chengtu, and killed Chi Hsu, Prince of Szu. He styled himself King of the Great Western State. Officers were sent out with soldiers to take possession of the outlying districts and to kill any who dared make the least resistance. Records of merit were kept by him and based upon the number of persons murdered by his officers. As a consequence, the whole province of Szechuan was depopulated.

In an engagement with the Manchus, Hsien Chung was shot, with an arrow, off his horse's back. He concealed himself under a pile of fuel, but was discovered, taken out, and beheaded.



## LESSON L

## SZE MENG PO

During the regime of Sze Meng Po, magistrate of Yeh, there lived in the city a certain witch with whom the subordinates of his yamen were closely associated. Every year they collected money from the people and pretended to wed a girl to the river god.

Any girl of low birth who was beautiful was likely to be declared at any time by the witch as one suitable to become the queen of the god. The girl thus declared was said to have been betrothed to the god in question and she was bathed, clad in new garments of silk and crape and made to live in what was called the "Fasting Palace" on the bank of the river. This place was beautifully decorated with red curtains and here a feast was given at which beef and wine were freely served. After this the girl was placed in a new bed with new beddings to float in the river and no girl ever sailed to any great distance before she was drowned.

Many parents who had beautiful daughters chose to take them to distant lands lest the witch might make them "wives" of the god. Consequently the city was deserted. The general belief in Yeh was that if the god were given no queen the inhabitants would be carried away and drowned in a flood.

Sze Meng Po, having heard of all this, told his subordinates that when the marriage of the river god took place he would go, too, and see the girl off.

The day came and Sze Meng Po went to witness the scene. A crowd of some three thousand persons had gathered. The witch was there, an old woman, 70 years of age, with a band of ten female disciples standing by her.

“Call out the would-be bride of the god,” said Sze Meng Po, “and let me see how she looks.”

Out came the girl. After examining her, Sze Meng Po turned to the witch and said, “She is by no means pretty. I should be pleased if you would go down into the river and inform its god that I will undertake to look for a prettier girl in his behalf, and her I will present to him the day after to-morrow.”

This said, he ordered his soldiers to seize her and she was thrown into the river.

“Why is she gone so long?” said he, after a while. “Let one of her disciples go after her.” Thereupon one of the disciples was thrown into the river. In a short time he sent another disciple after them and then another. Having sent three of the disciples, he declared: “I see! those witches have failed to deliver my message because they are women.” With this, he suffered one of the subordinates of his yamen to be thrown into the river. He remained standing on the bank, gazing intently on the water, as if waiting for a reply. Time went rapidly by and all the spectators were seized with terror.

He was about to send all his subordinates after those who had not returned, when they came down on their knees and knocked their foreheads on the ground until blood came out. With tears in their eyes they asked for forgiveness. Sze Meng Po merely said: “The river god has no business to detain his guests so long; let’s adjourn.”

From this moment, no one in Yeh has dared to circulate the old story of the alleged wedding of the river god.

## **PART III**

### **LESSON II**

#### **AMERICA'S RECOGNITION OF THE CHINESE REPUBLIC**

##### **PRESIDENT WILSON'S MESSAGE TO PRESIDENT YUAN.**

The Government and people of the United States having abundantly testified their sympathy with the people of China upon their assumption of the attributes and powers of self-government deem it opportune at this time when the Representatives in the National Assembly have met to discharge their high duty, to set the seal of full accomplishment upon these aspirations of the Chinese people; therefore I extend in the name of my government and of my countrymen greeting and welcome to the New China which is thus entering into the family of nations.

In taking this step, I entertain the confident hope and expectation that in perfecting the Republican form of government, the Chinese nation will attain the highest degree of development and well-being, and that under the new rule all the established obligations of China, which passed to the Provisional Government, will in turn pass to be observed by the government established by the Assembly.

### **LESSON IV**

#### **REGULATIONS OF THE NATIONAL LOAN OF THE THIRD YEAR OF THE REPUBLIC OF CHINA**

Art. 1.—The Government issues this loan for the purpose of adjusting the financial conditions and increasing the funds of the National Treasury. The authorized amount of

the loan shall be \$16,000,000. The loan shall be known as "THE NATIONAL LOAN OF THE THIRD YEAR OF THE REPUBLIC OF CHINA."

Art. 2.—The rate of interest of this loan shall be 6% per annum.

Art. 3.—Interest on this loan shall be paid in the sixth month and twelfth month of each year.

Art. 4.—During the first three years following the issue of this loan, only the interest thereon will be paid. Commencing from the fourth year, one ninth of the total amount of the loan shall be redeemed each year by the drawing of bonds, and the whole amount of the loan shall be redeemed in the twelfth year.

The above mentioned drawing of bonds shall take place at Peking, on the fifteenth day of the twelfth month of each year.

Art. 5.—The Ministry of Finance and the Ministry of Communications shall raise the full amount of \$960,000, which is the amount of interest on the loan for one year, and hand it over to a foreign bank designated by the Kung Chai Chu (公債局), or Bureau of Public Loans, to be deposited there always as a guarantee for the interest. Besides this sum, the Ministry of Finance and the Ministry of Communications shall jointly appropriate every month a definite fund amounting to \$80,000, which shall also be deposited with the designated bank for the purpose of meeting the payment of interest on due dates.

#### LESSON V

Art. 6.—The above mentioned definite fund shall be drawn every month from the following sources: \$50,000

from the surplus income of the railways of the Ministry of Communications after meeting previous charges; \$30,000 from the Tsu-yu-yi-shang-shui (左右翼商稅) or Traffic Revenue of the Left and Right Wings.

The principal of this loan shall be repaid out of a fund of \$2,800,000, which is the annual surplus income of the Peking-Hankow Railway after meeting the fourth charge thereon. This fund shall also be appropriated and deposited, commencing from the fourth year, in the manner described in Article 5 above.

Art. 7.—The repayment of principal and the payment of interest of this loan shall be made by the head and branch offices of the Bank of China and of the Bank of Communications, the foreign bank or banks entrusted in that capacity by the Government, substantial native banks, and the Maritime Customs Houses.

Art. 8.—This loan shall be issued in series. The subscriber to the first series shall be entitled to one full year's interest in addition to the regular interest, viz, a premium of \$6 will be given on each bond of \$100. The subscribers to the second series shall be entitled to receive one year's interest in advance. No such privileges will be extended to subscribers to any subsequent series. The Bureau of Public Loans shall exercise its discretion and determine the number of series in which to effect the complete issue of the loan.

Art. 9.—The Bonds of this loan shall be issued at 94% of the face value.

Art. 10.—The Bonds of this loan shall be Bearer Bonds. In case the subscribers specifically request the affixing of their names on the Bonds, their request may be complied with

Art. 11.—The above Bonds, shall be of five denominations:

(a) \$10,000 each.

(b) \$1,000 each.

(c) \$100 each.

(d) \$50 each.

(e) \$10 each.

### LESSON VI

Art. 12.—The above Bonds, when they are due for repayment of principal, and their matured coupons can be utilized as cash in payment of Government taxes and duties, and for other purposes.

Art. 13.—The above Bonds can be used as guarantee fund or reserve of banks.

Art. 14.—The above Bonds can be bought, sold, mortgaged, or used as security in cases where a guarantee fund is required in the public service.

Art. 15.—All officials and other persons concerned in the transactions of the above Bonds, who by any action injure the credit of the same shall be liable to a punishment of imprisonment for a period not over one year and a half, or of a fine not more than \$200, in accordance with the Law Relating to the Violation of Orders.

Art. 16.—Fifteen days prior to the date of repayment of principal or payment of interest of this loan, the Ministry of Finance and the Ministry of Communications shall jointly petition the President for the appointment of two Censors and two Auditors of the Audit Department, who shall proceed to the Bureau of Public Loans, the Bank of China and the Bank of Communications to inspect the accounts of

this loan and the fund for the repayment of principal and payment of interest of this loan.

The Censors, the Auditors of the Audit Department, and the authorities of the Ministry of Finance and the Ministry of Communications shall jointly-superintend the drawing of bonds for redemption.

## LESSON VII

### REGULATIONS FOR THE BUREAU OF PUBLIC LOANS

1.—With the view to soliciting subscriptions to National loans the Bureau of Public Loans (公債局) is established by order of the Chinese Government to manage the transactions in connection with such loans.

2.—There shall be sixteen Directors, consisting of both Chinese and foreigners, with one Chairman and four Vice-Chairmen to be elected from among the Directors. These officers shall regularly attend to their duties in the Bureau.

3.—The Board of Directors shall consist of the following personnel:—

- a. One member of the Ministry of Finance.
- b. One member of the Ministry of Communications.
- c. Two delegates (foreign) from the Shuiwu Chu.
- d. The Director-General of the Bank of China.
- e. The Director-General of the Bank of Communications.
- f. One foreign Manager of the Banque Industrielle de Chine.
- g. One foreign Manager of the Commercial Guarantee Bank of Chihli.

- h.** Two Managers from reliable Chinese banks and/or firms.
- i.** Six of the holders of largest number of the Bonds.  
(At least three of the number must be Chinese.)

The above Directors shall hold their respective posts in their personal capacities only.

4.—The members of staff of the Bureau shall be appointed by the Chairman and the Vice-Chairman and their number is not fixed.

5.—The Directors shall form a Board of Directors to discuss the affairs of the Bureau. The dates for holding meetings are to be fixed subsequently.

6.—The Chairman of the Bureau shall control all matters in connection with the subscriptions to the loans. The Vice-Chairman shall assist the Chairman in managing the business connected with the loans.

7.—Besides attending the Director's meetings to participate in the discussion of the business of the Bureau, the Directors shall scrutinize all the accounts and inspect the funds reserved for the redemption of principal and payment of interest of the loans.

### LESSON VIII

8.—The staff of the Bureau shall perform their duties under the direction of the Chairman and the Vice-Chairman. The regulations governing their duties are to be drawn up subsequently.

9.—The Bureau shall co-operate with all foreign and Chinese banks and capitalists in the country to dispose of the Bonds through contracting agents and/or by other means. Any banks or capitalists who undertake to act as agencies to



sell the Bonds shall be entitled to a commission of not more than 6%.

10.—When the Bonds are ready for issue, the Bureau may, according to circumstances, authorize the head offices and/or branch offices of the Bank of China and the Bank of Communications to co-operate with the Stock Exchanges to effect the sale of the Bonds.

11.—To agents who have succeeded in effecting the subscription of a very large number of the Bonds, the Ministry of Finance shall petition the President to award suitable medals by way of encouragement and appreciation of such meritorious services.

12.—The detailed Regulations in regard to the subscription and issue of the Bonds, the payment of principal and interest, the keeping of accounts, etc., shall from time to time be drawn up in accordance with the Regulations of National Loans, and be submitted to the Minister of Finance for approval.

13.—These Regulations shall be enforced from the date on which they are sanctioned by the President.

14.—Further additions to these Regulations shall from time to time be made and submitted to the President for sanction and promulgation.

### LESSON XIII

#### FROM A CERTAIN MINISTER AT PEKING TO THE BOARD OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS.

SIR:—

I have the honour to inform you that the Ministers of the other Foreign Powers have called my attention to the conclusion of negotiations between the Chinese authorities

at Shanghai and one A. B., representative of a certain ..... concern in Shanghai by which the latter have become the farmers of the likin revenue to be collected on cattle brought into Shanghai, and no cattle will be permitted to land at Shanghai without certificates from the farmers, under penalty of confiscation.

Inasmuch as this arrangement virtually amounts to a monopoly, with facilities for illegitimate extortion, and is in conflict with treaty stipulations, I have the honour, acting upon the instance of my Colleagues, to request the issuance of instructions by Your Highness' Board, calling upon the Chinese authorities responsible at Shanghai to terminate immediately, as is required by the existing treaties, and Article IX of the Franco-Chinese Treaty of 1844, the contract entered into between themselves and the.....concern for the collection of the cattle likin.

I have, etc.

### LESSON XVIII

#### **PRESIDENTIAL MANDATE FOR THE PRESERVANCE OF NEUTRALITY IN THE EUROPEAN WAR.**

Whereas we are happily at peace with all Sovereign Powers and States;

And whereas a state of war unhappily exists between Austro-Hungary and Servia, thereby involving many other European Powers in a state of war;

And whereas by faith of treaties of friendship and commerce we are on terms of friendship and amicable intercourse with each of the Powers;

And whereas the aforesaid unhappy state of war will seriously affect the commerce of the Far East;

And whereas great numbers of our citizens reside and carry on commerce and possess property and establishments and enjoy protection together with various rights and privileges within the dominions of each of the aforesaid Powers;

And whereas we, being desirous of maintaining the peace of the Far East and of preserving to our citizens the blessings of peace, which now they happily enjoy, are firmly purposed and determined to maintain a strict and impartial neutrality in the aforesaid state of war unhappily existing between the aforesaid Powers;

I, the President, therefore specially issue the enjoined regulations for the strict observance of neutrality by all our citizens in accordance with the existing laws and statutes and the law of nations in relation thereto.

The Military Governors and Civil Governors of all the Provinces are hereby ordered to instruct their subordinates to diligently and faithfully follow the precepts laid down in the International Law and to maintain the friendship with all the Powers with whom we are happily at peace.

### LESSON XIX

1.—Belligerents are not allowed to occupy any part of the territory or the territorial waters of China; nor to commit an act of war therein, nor to make use of any place therein as a base of operations against their adversaries.

2.—Troops of any of the belligerents, their munitions of war or supplies are not allowed to cross the territory or territorial waters of China.

In the event of a violation, the troops shall submit to the Chinese Authorities to be disarmed and the munitions of war and supplies shall be held in custody until the termination of the war.

3.—If belligerent war-ships and auxiliary vessels are found in a port within the territorial waters of China where they are not entitled to remain, China may order them to disarm and detain the officers and crew until the termination of the war.

4.—The troops interned and the officers and crew detained in accordance with Articles 2 and 3 respectively will be supplied, if necessary, with food and clothing until the termination of the war. The expenses thus incurred shall be made good by the respective belligerents.

5.—Belligerent war-ships or auxiliary vessels, which are allowed by the Local Authorities to remain within the territorial waters of China, can remain there for a period not exceeding twenty-four hours. If they are unable to depart for the sea within this period on account of stress of weather, or on account of the fact that the repairs to damage are not completed, or of the fact that they have not shipped a sufficient quantity of necessary food provisions and fuel to enable them to reach the nearest port of their own country, they shall leave it to the Commanders of the Chinese Navy or the Local Authorities to consider an extension of the time limit. They must leave as soon as the circumstances of the delay are at an end.

6.—Except on account of stress of weather or repairs to damage, the number of war-ships or auxiliary vessels

belonging to a belligerent which may simultaneously remain in one of the ports or roadsteads of China shall not be more than three.

7.—When war-ships or auxiliary vessels belonging to several belligerents are present simultaneously in one of the ports of China, the ship or vessel which arrived later cannot leave until twenty-four hours after the departure of the one which arrived earlier and until after the receipt of an order to proceed from a Commander of the Chinese Navy or the Local Authorities.

8.—Belligerent war-ships and auxiliary vessels are forbidden to re-victual their supplies in the territorial waters of China above the peace standard or to increase their fighting strength.

#### LESSON XX

9.—Belligerent war-ships or auxiliary vessels are forbidden to make captures in the territorial waters of China and, except when it is absolutely necessary on account of stress of weather or repairs to damage or seeking supplies, they are also forbidden to bring a prize into any of the ports of China. They must leave as soon as the circumstances of their entry are at an end. During their stay, they are also forbidden to allow the prisoners of war to go on shore or to sell the prize and its contents. If belligerent war-ships or auxiliary vessels do not conform to the foregoing provision, China may release the prize and the prisoners of war, intern the prize crew, and confiscate the ship or vessel or the goods. Prisoners of war brought into the territory of China by belligerent troops as well as those

who escape to China will be released forthwith. The troops who bring prisoners of war into the territory of China will be interned.

10.—Articles 3, 5, 6 and 8 are not applicable to belligerent war-ships devoted exclusively to scientific, religious or philanthropic purposes.

11.—Within the territory and the territorial waters of China belligerents are not allowed to form corps of combatants or equip fighting vessels or open recruiting agencies or establish a prize court or set up a blockade of one of the ports.

12.—The guards attached to the Legations of the various Powers in Peking and their troops stationed along the route between Peking and Shanhaikuan shall continue to conduct themselves so as to conform to the Peace Protocol of the 25th day of the 7th moon of the 27th year of Kuang Hsu, i.e., September 7th, 1901. They are not allowed to interfere with the present war.

The foreign troops stationed in other parts of China shall act likewise.

Those who do not conform to the foregoing provision may be interned and disarmed by China until the termination of the war.

13.—Belligerents are not allowed to deprive Chinese who reside within their dominions of their money or property or force them to enlist in their military service. If necessary, China may despatch war-ships to render them protection or to take them out of the country.

14.—The fact of China using various means to resist an attempt of a belligerent to violate these Articles of Neutrality cannot be regarded as a hostile act.

15.—Chinese citizens within the territory and the territorial waters of China are not allowed to proceed to a belligerent power to enlist in its military service or as a member of the crew of one of its war-ships or auxiliary vessels. Nor are they allowed to participate in the war.

16.—Within the territory and the territorial waters of China no person is allowed to arm and equip for a belligerent or furnish ships or stores and military supplies, such as shots and cartridges, gunpowder, saltpetre, arms, etc., for the purpose of performing acts of war or making captures. Nor are they allowed to supply any of the belligerents with funds.

#### LESSON XXI.

17.—Within the territory and the territorial waters of China no person is allowed to carry on the work of espionage for any of the belligerents, or prepare despatches concerning the operations of the war on its behalf.

18.—Without the permission of a Commander of the Army or the Navy or the Local Authorities no person within the territory or the territorial waters of China is allowed to sell coal, fuel or food provisions to the troops or any of the war-ships or auxiliary vessels of the belligerents.

19.—Without the permission of the Local Authorities, no person within the territory and the territorial waters of China is allowed to repair or load or unload a prize on behalf of a belligerent; nor to purchase, exchange, accept as

a gift or keep in custody the prize and all the belongings taken as prize.

20.—Chinese ships and all persons on board them shall observe the regulation in force at any port effectively blockaded by one of the belligerents and must not carry contraband of war or forward military despatches or transport goods for one of the belligerents or commit other acts in violation of the laws of war.

21.—Any person within the territory or the territorial waters of China, who violates these Articles of Neutrality, if he is a Chinese, will be punished in conformity with the laws and ordinances, and the goods confiscated; if he is a foreigner, he will be dealt with in accordance with treaty and the law of the nations.

22.—Chinese citizens who violate the laws of war and are captured by a belligerent will be left to be dealt with by its courts in accordance with the law of nations. If the capture by the belligerent is illegal, it shall indemnify any loss or injury.

23.—Belligerents are not allowed to detain the arms or contraband of war carried by Chinese vessels between Chinese ports or for or from another neutral country. The ordinary commercial goods carried by Chinese vessels and belonging to a belligerent, as well as all goods belonging to China and carried in belligerent vessels, shall be allowed to pass to and fro without let or molestation.

All belligerents shall recognize and give effect to the passports and certificates issued by China.

24.—The cases not provided for in the present Articles will be dealt with by China in accordance with the Convention respecting the Rights and Duties of Neutral Powers



and Persons in case of War on Land and the Convention concerning the Rights and Duties of Neutral Powers in Naval War, concluded between China and the other Powers at The Hague in 1907.

## LESSON XXII

### FROM THE TAOTAI OF SHANGHAI TO THE SENIOR CONSUL

SIR:

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt on the 11th day of the 5th moon of your despatch relating to the making of arrests by the Municipal Police outside the Settlement Limits, which has necessitated the drawing up of new regulations. Your arguments have been duly noted.

There are several points in the original draft which seem to require revision. Besides, some of the proposals submitted by the Consular Body, are, it seems to me, not entirely in accord with the principles of equity. I, therefore, would reply, paragraph by paragraph as follows:—

1. The object of Rule 1 is to prevent a Chinese living outside the Settlement from bringing an action against a Chinese resident thereof in any court other than the Mixed Court of the International Settlement. This requirement is in keeping with the practice which obliges a plaintiff to sue a defendant in his (defendant's) own court. Your despatch under reply, however, uses the words Chiek Wei (outside the limits), Chu Chiek Wei (outside the limits of the Settlement) and Chu Chiek (Settlement); but does not mention either the word "plaintiff" or "defendant." The wording, in my opinion, is ambiguous. I would, therefore change it to read:

In cases where both parties to a suit are Chinese subjects and where the defendant is a resident of the settlement, it shall be incumbent upon the plaintiff to file the complaint in the Mixed Court of the International Settlement; and if either party is not satisfied with its judgment, he shall be permitted to appeal to the Shanghai Taotai, who may either name a deputy other than the Mixed Court magistrate to hear the appeal, or hear it in person, if the case is of more than ordinary interest.

This amendment should be incorporated into Rule 1. Inasmuch as similar arrangements were made last year with the British Consulate-General in connection with a certain case, there can be no objection to the amendment now.

2. Rule 2 as amended by the Consular Body, states that in cases of urgency arrests should be made when a due notice is given to the local officials, and there should be no necessity for the police to wait for the formalities of examination and countersignature. I am led to believe that this provision permits a free construction so as to include all cases where no "urgency" exists. In other words, on the plea of "urgency," the police have every facility to make arrests at will, to the detriment of law, as well as the peace and order of the locality. It seems but proper to apply in such cases the existing rules of the Settlement which never permit an arrest to be made without the formality of notification, countersignature, or the aid of the Municipal Police, nor an offender to be taken out of the Settlement without a preliminary hearing at the Mixed Court. The rule as originally drawn up, therefore, should stand, except the part relating to the place where a notice is

to be given. That place is sometimes the local court and sometimes the police department, and it is conceded that some inconvenience will be encountered in this connection. To meet this difficulty, we shall make that place uniformly the police department of the district concerned.

3. Rule 2 as originally drafted provides that any Municipal detective or constable making arrests outside the Settlement without having the warrant first presented to the proper authorities, is himself liable to arrest by the Chinese police. This procedure is based upon the provision of Article 9 of the British Treaty of Tientsin which is to the effect that whenever a British subject commits an offense against the law, he may be arrested and handed to the nearest consul for punishment. To make an arrest outside the Settlement contrary to the regulations is an offense against the law, and the authority of the local official in this respect is already secured him by the Treaty. Furthermore, Rule 4 speaks of the punishment to be meted out to the offender. Unless he is arrested on the spot, he may be outside of our reach. Whom can we have then to punish? It is not considered advisable to make the change as suggested.

4. Rule 4 is closely related to Rule 2 and its provision is not foreign to the subject under consideration. It should stand with corrections.

In conclusion, I beg to state that after due consideration I have decided to make the regulations in five articles all of which are, in my opinion, just and equitable, showing no partiality one way or the other. I should be pleased if you would place the enclosed copy of the regulations before the Consular Body for its approval, and favour me with a reply.

## LESSON XXVI

**THE INAUGURATION SPEECH**

BY PRESIDENT YUAN SHIH-KAI.

I, although incompetent, have been tens of years moving myself in the political world, and I have adopted a firm and steady policy all the time. My opinion is that the chief and first principle of Government consists in the clear definition and promulgation of legal system and the establishment and maintenance of public order; and then in compliance with the requirements of the time and circumstances, efforts should be made to keep pace with the world in the path of progress.

Therefore in various reform work all things that could develop the mind of people I have determined to introduce one by one. I have preferred the more conservative rather than the extreme radical course, and my reasons are (1) that in view of the importance of the nation and the people, their fate should not be put to any risk, and (2) the teachings and traditions of the ancients of these 4,000 years should not be swept away.

After 1909 I retired to my field, and severed my connection with politics. The purpose of my life—to save the country—vanished as the smoke and cloud which passes over one's eyes. However, after the outbreak of Wuchang and Hankow, when I was forced by circumstances to assume the responsibility, it was my great anxiety lest my nation and my people would be deprived of their existence, therefore I cherished the purpose to mitigate their misery. Then the abdication of the ex-Manchu Emperor took place and the Republic was established. Not forsaken by the Five Great

Races, I was elected the Provisional President of the Republic. There is no surprise in the adoption of this form of Government, because the embryo of it did exist 4,000 years ago. However, restrictions and obstructions have been placed upon authority, leaving me no free hand to advance the interest of the nation. I have been worn out by anxiety and fear, which deprived me of my appetite and sleep. Greatest patience has been exercised with the hope that peace and tranquillity might come in course of time.

Unexpectedly in the 7th month of this year a handful of violent characters attempted to destroy the consolidation and to upset the nation, and the fate of the infant Republic of East Asia was then trembling in the balance. For the salvation of the nation and its people I reluctantly resorted to arms, and in consequence of the general hatred of the people for anarchy, and the obedience of the troops, the internal rebellion was suppressed within two months. After this it was my purpose to resign and retire to my field, in order that I might enjoy forever the blessings of the Republic. But contrary to my wish the National Assembly has elected me, and the Friendly Powers have decided to recognize the Republic on the day when I should be elected. Therefore I have not dared to show my humbleness by setting a lofty ideal in refusing to accept the responsibility, for fear that the foundation of the nation will be shaken and the expectations of the fathers and brothers will be frustrated. I am also one of the citizens of the country, and the single purpose of my heart is to effect the salvation of the nation and its people. I dare not regard the success or failure of my undertaking, nor consider the hardships

which confront me. Hence I have endeavoured to accept the post. Now I want to unfold my most sincere and loving mind before you citizens.

It has always been said by the Western scholars that the principal thing for a Constitutional Government is the law, and that for a Republican Government is morality. Therefore morality should be considered as the principle and the law as an application. Now our people have suddenly been converted into citizens of a Republic, therefore it is imperative that the law should be used to support the morality of the people. I have made inquiry among the learned scholars of French, American and other nations, and have obtained the true definition of the word Republicanism. It means that the republican form of government is a Government which gathers together the opinions of all its citizens to form a complete system of law for the strict observance of all, and liberty or freedom outside the limit of law shall be forsaken by all. This kind of law-abiding habit can only be acquired gradually, until it becomes as habitual as a person regards the time of his going to and rising up from sleep, or the way he regulates his appetite. Then this shall be called a law-abiding nation. Our citizens are by nature mild and obedient, but have not yet been accustomed to the habit of keeping strictly the law. I therefore hope that the citizens of this country will all keep the law of the country, and that by their constancy their moral standard will imperceptibly be lifted to a higher plane.

#### INDUSTRIAL PROGRESS.

Again, the principal of the Republican Government is the people. The desire of the majority of the people is that

they may live quietly and enjoy the fruit of their labours. But since the revolution the people have sustained all kinds of hardships and difficulties, and when their condition is mentioned it is really heart-rending. I have daily hoped that the normal condition of the people may be restored, and I have not dared to put forth any measures that would tend to disturb them. I am sorry that no precaution could be taken to restrain the violent characters, hence the innocent have been afflicted. This I have regarded with great regret. I wish to assert my utmost strength to make the people enjoy the real blessings of the Republic, so that the aim of obtaining for them the highest happiness may be reached. The livelihood of the people has become so difficult to win that they have been afflicted by hunger and cold, and the more cunning ones among the violent characters have availed themselves of the opportunity by leading or driving them to the path of death. This is indeed deplorable. Should permanent peace and order be desired for the nation, it is imperative that every man should be enabled to obtain a livelihood, which can only be done by paying special attention to Agriculture, Industry and Commerce. I have heard that the best class of people in the civilized countries are those who have decided to enter upon a life of industry. The climate and natural resources of our country are by no means inferior to those of other Powers, but as the arts of cultivation and cattle breeding have not been studied, the result of industry is inferior, and the mines, forest, and fisheries are not developed, leaving the riches under the earth; there is no means for the furtherance of commercial enterprise; thus the exports have dwindled

every day. The condition may be compared to the rich man who has buried his riches under the ground but is complaining all the time of poverty. I hope that the people of the whole country will direct their attention to industrial enterprises, so that wealth may be increased and the livelihood of the people may be obtained more easily. Thus the foundation of the nation will be firmly laid.

## LESSON XXVII

## THE INAUGURATION SPEECH

*(Continued)*

However, there are two reasons why the industry of the country has not been developed. 1. The education of the country is still in its infant stage. 2. There is no large capital. Every branch of industry is in close relation to science. No attention has been directed to physics or chemistry, steam or electricity. While others are engaged in the struggle for education, or the war of commerce, we are still conservatively clinging to the old system, and have a superstitious faith in empty talk. I hope that the citizens of the country will introduce among them the enlightened education of foreign countries. Even in the departments of politics and laws, the practical, not the theoretical part alone, must be emphasized. This is my opinion with regard to education.

Unless there is large capital it is no use to talk of industry. In view of the fertility of our soil and the riches of our produce, how can we call this country poor? The necessaries of life are but those things which are connected with clothes, food and dwelling, and silver and gold are a medium of exchange for the above. If there be a shortage



of silver and gold the means of exchange will be lacking, thus without money we shall be without a medium of exchange. Therefore to prepare a start for the various industrial enterprises, attention should be directed to the neighbours who are rich and possess ample means of the medium of exchange. When the natural resources are opened, and there are no waste lands and idle people, there will be a surplus after the repayment of the loan out of the gain made from the capital. Would not this be better than the man who buries his treasures and yet is worrying about his poverty? Therefore I hope that my country will introduce foreign capital in order to develop the industry of this country.

To introduce the civilization and capital of foreign countries is not only for the good of the country but it is good for the world at large. The principle of the civilization of the world is to supply the deficiency of others by our own surplus, giving joy and happiness to society; hence in this matter there should be no distinction between countries. This is why Confucius liked to talk of universalization. Now our country has become a Republic, and consequently all the old thoughts belonging to the period of seclusion should be swept away. All our citizens who have observed the laws fixed by our own country, should also understand the common law of the nations in the universe. In the intercourse with other countries everything should be done in accordance with the light of civilization, and we should never have any prejudice towards foreigners, causing trouble and breaking the law of justice.

The attitude of the foreign Powers towards us has always been that of peace and fairness, giving us cordial assistance whenever occasion arose. This was of course due to the civilization of the world, yet all the same we highly appreciate the good will of the friendly Powers. It is most important that all citizens of the Republic shall clearly understand this, and endeavour to strengthen the international friendship and sincerity. I hereby declare that all treaties, conventions and other engagements entered into by the former Manchu and the Provisional Republican Government with foreign Governments shall be strictly observed, and that all contracts duly concluded by the former Governments with foreign companies and individuals shall also be strictly observed, and further that all rights, privileges and immunities enjoyed by foreigners in China by virtue of international engagements, national enactments and established usages are hereby confirmed. This declaration I make with a view to maintaining international amity and peace.

The above is but a summary of the declaration which I desire to unfold before you citizens, and the principle I want to repeat and enlarge upon consists of two characters: "Tao Teh" (morality). These two characters are most comprehensive, and it has even been impossible for great sages to reveal their whole significance by thousands and thousands of words. I will speak what I understand by these two characters, and I will group them under four characters; viz., loyalty, faith, steadiness and respectability.

## LESSON XXVIII

## THE INAUGURATION SPEECH

*(Continued)*

The original idea of loyalty is that a person should be loyal to the country and not to any particular man. If every man should hold as his principle loyalty to the nation instead of to any man or house, he will be able to prefer the interest of the whole body to that of a few individuals. The chief thing is that he should make light of power and influence, and direct his attention to his obligation and responsibility. He should not sacrifice the interest of the country for the acquirement of power and influence.

Confucius said that without faith no nation will stand. In some civilized countries the deceitful are bywords among their fellow-men, and they feel the shame of public contempt. When George Washington was young he never told a lie, because he received the instructions of his father. From olden times our country has laid much stress on faith and righteousness, but recently the hearts of the people have not been similar to those of the ancients; they have acquired the habit of deceitfulness. Without faith it is even impossible to regulate one's person, and how can a nation be regulated and governed without faith? Tseng Kuo-fan, of the late Ching Dynasty, said that the foundation for the regulation of a person, is that no lie should be told. Therefore in dealing either with the internal or with the external problem faith is necessary.

What is steadiness? In all civilized countries no efforts have been spared in the preservation of the traditions of the nation, and they are anxious to preserve any name or thing as well as they can. That, however, does not impede the great progress of their development. Hitherto the Moral Teaching has been a great bulwark of this country, and after 4,000 years of alterations and changes, there is something of an indestructible essence in it. However there are some who have been misguided by theory, and they do not follow what is practical but are full of high sounding words. Before they have acquired any advantage from foreign learning they have forsaken all the traditions of their own country. This shallowness of mind has spread quickly. If there be no branches where shall the leaves be attached? Therefore the remedy for the above is steadiness.

What is respectability? A person must possess a constant mind before he can have any constant occupation. If a person should be destitute of constancy, should anything happen, his presence of mind will be lost, and should nothing happen, he will be idle. In all his business there is an air of idleness. Such influence will frustrate every plan. No man will be responsible, but every one will stand ironically. Everybody will seem not to mind even his own business. Hence we understand the meaning of the ancients when they said that men should "respect their business." Therefore to remove idleness respectability is important.

With regard to the above four characters—loyalty, faith, steadiness and respectability—I am determined to

encourage myself and the citizens of this country with them. Mind them every day, and do not allow them to leave your mouths. The principles upon which the nation is established are the right and the wrong, the good and the bad, and although the likes and dislikes of the people are not the same, there is surely a standard for the right and wrong, for good and bad. Generally speaking, those who discharge their duties and abide by the law are right and good, and those who have overstepped the bounds of propriety and violated the principle of righteousness are the wrong and bad ones. Therefore I desire that the citizens of the country should have the knowledge to distinguish them.

There are some persons who say that as civilization advances frugality will give place to extravagance. If this extremely weak and poverty-stricken country should imitate the extravagance of others instead of imitating their civilization, it would be similar to the case of a bedridden invalid trying to vie with an athlete in strength. During recent years the standard of living of the people has been raised daily, but the wealth of the people has been reduced more and more. The ancients said that when the state becomes extravagant, frugality should be shown. I therefore hope that with regard to morality the citizens of the country will pay more attention to frugality.

In conclusion I should say that if law and morality should go hand in hand the foundation of the Republic will be firm and immovable. With regard to the problem of National Defence, our country needs rest and recovery from its wounds, and this therefore is no time for a struggle with

armed force. However, my heart's yearning is that men of the army and navy should regard it their obligation to obey orders and their duty to protect the people of the country. Who among the officers does not know the above? But these two items have not been fully observed, being flooded by the recent tide of sedition, and I must acknowledge that I have failed to perform my duty in controlling them. Hereafter with regard to morale education I will pay full attention, so that I can face the citizens of this country.

Therefore now with most sincere and loving heart I declare faithfully before you citizens that "if one day I remain in my post, that day I will be held responsible. Chung Hwa Min Kuo is the Republic of the 400,000,000 of her citizens. Should brothers be peaceful towards one another, the house will be developed, and should the people of the whole country be of one heart and one desire, the nation will prosper. This is my prayer for Chung Hwa Min Kuo."

### LESSON XXXVI

#### FROM THE INSPECTOR-GENERAL OF CUSTOMS TO THE BOARD OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS

SIR;—

I have the honour to invite your attention to a despatch from the District Postal Commissioner at Amoy which has been referred to me for consideration by the Postal Secretary.

I have to report that unregistered native postal hongs at this port frequently seek to have their packets carried on board steamers in a manner contrary to law. The seizure by the postal officials of

such packets has been of frequent occurrence. In the case of registered hongs, the matter can be disposed of by the imposition upon the return of the packets of a fine as is required by the regulations. But the unregistered hongs, always leave their packets unclaimed in the hands of the Post Office, for the purpose of evading a fine. Being powerless to make them take the packets, the postal authorities are obliged to open the same and charge under the regulations each letter, upon its delivery, a penalty equal to three times the usual rate. Thus registered hongs pay fines when unregistered firms committing a similar offence against the regulations get off unpunished. I would therefore request the adoption of rules by which the latter could be brought to account.

The Postal Secretary adds:

The object of the establishment of the Postal Service is to look after the interests of the Government as well as the public at large. It has been the constant endeavour on the part of the Postal Administration to cultivate the good will of private organizations which had existed before the inauguration of the Service. With this end in view, we have made regulations by which such organizations are required to register themselves with the Post Office before they are allowed to send their mail packages through the Post Office on board steamers. To our surprise, some of them have up to date failed to register. They not only forward their packets in a clandestine manner but also refuse to claim them when seized, thus making the addressees pay the fine on their behalf. Their existence is a menace to the Post Administration, and a curse to the public at large. Their offense against the Postal regulations is not one of ordinary importance. Since the Postal Administration possesses no power of prosecution, it is necessary that we should be enabled in some way to put a stop to the practice complained of.

In view of the foregoing, the Inspector-General desires to observe that the practice referred to is detrimental to the interests of both the Postal Service and the general public.

Under our contracts with the steamship companies, we pay them subsidies, and they agree to carry no packets unless transmitted through the Post Office. Owing to the existence at various ports of Chinese postal hong's, we permit them to register, when they can have their packets sent through our Office, this privilege being necessarily denied to those who do not register. The latter, however, frequently resort to a method of smuggling, viz., by making secret arrangements with members of the ship's crew to conceal their packets on board the ship. Now and then such packets are seized by the Custom Officers. As they contain letters sent by individuals to their friends and relatives, it is not considered advisable to confiscate them. Under the regulations there are two ways of disposing of the case, either by the return of the packets to the Chinese postal hong's concerned; or the delivery of the letters as penalty letters with triple postage.

The refusal on the part of the postal hong's to reclaim the packets of course renders it impossible to proceed under the former arrangement and it remains for us to deal with the case according to the latter method. Nevertheless, this means that the offenders get no punishment which would deter them from committing the same offence in the future.

Would it be possible for the local authorities at the different ports to issue a proclamation, compelling such postal firms as have not registered themselves to do so, in order that they may enjoy the privilege, afforded by the regulations, of having their packets sent through the Post office, or to close their establishments, should



they still decline to comply? Or is there any other possible way of dealing with the situation?

The Inspectorate General would be happy to be advised accordingly that it may transmit the decision of the Board for the guidance of our Branch Post Offices.

### LESSON XI

#### FROM THE INSPECTOR-GENERAL OF CUSTOMS TO THE BOARD OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS

SIR;—

With reference to the new arrangement respecting the collection of customs duties at Tsingtau, it will be remembered that Article I of the Agreement recently concluded between China and Germany provides for the payment, by China, each year, to the German Authorities at Tsingtau, of a sum of money equal to 20 per cent. of the year's total import duty collected at that port, as her contribution towards the expenditure incurred by the government of the Leased Territory of Tsingtau.

In view of this fact, the Inspector-General, sometime ago, issued a Circular to the Commissioners of Customs in China requiring the issuance of drawback certificates instead of free permits in the case of foreign re-exports destined for the Port of Tsingtau.

In a later despatch addressed to this office, the Commissioner of Customs at Shanghai calls attention to a practice which has been in force at his port. It appears that in the case of foreign re-exports declared for other Treaty Ports in China, which are entitled to a free permit but to no drawback certificate under the regulations, or

which have been imported for a period exceeding three years, it has been customary to issue no drawback certificate or free permit but to enter, in the General Memo, after the description of goods, words to the effect that such goods, having paid the regular import duty at his port, are not subject to any further payment of duty, thus exempting them from further payment at the port of destination. He requests instructions as to whether the practice should be continued when goods of any one of the two classes above described are destined for the port of Tsingtau.

It is the opinion of the Inspectorate-General that the reason for the instructions requiring the issuance of drawback certificates instead of free permits, as aforesaid, is the fact that the annual amount of the "20% duty" due the German authorities at Tsingtau varies according to the total receipt of import duty on foreign goods at that port. If, for instance, goods are admitted free of duty at Tsingtau upon the production of a free permit as evidence of their having paid the regular import duty at the port of re-exportation, no difficulty, it is true, will be encountered, so far as the returns and records of other ports go, but the Tsingtau office will have a good deal of trouble in straightening out its accounts when the time comes for it to ascertain the amount of the "20% duty" due the Germans.

Furthermore, this office is of opinion that the entry the Shanghai office is in the habit of making in the General Memo, has the force of a free permit although it is not stated in its exact form. It, therefore, has again instructed the Shanghai office that, as regards goods destined for Tsingtau, it shall govern itself according to the terms of the

Circular upon the subject, i.e., by issuing drawback certificates to goods which were entitled to a free permit under the regulations hitherto in force, instead of making the entry in the General Memo to the effect that such goods should be exempted from payment at Tsingtau; and that the practice of making the entry in question be altogether discontinued in the future. The object is to make all goods, making entry at the port of Tsingtau, pay the regular import duty at its custom house, thus doing away with the extra amount of work, as would have otherwise been entailed, of keeping an account of what it does not actually collect.

I have now the honour to submit a résumé of the case for the information of the Board.

**LESSON XLIV**  
**FROM THE BOARD OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS TO THE**  
**BRITISH MINISTER**

SIR;—

I have the honour to acknowledge the receipt on....  
.....of a note from your excellency  
on the subject of the establishment of a Chinese town  
outside the Settlement Limit at Shanghai. You state in  
part, as follows:—

If the municipal form of government as introduced in the Shanghai International Settlement has appealed favourably to the Chinese authorities, the proper thing to do would have been to adopt similar police and sanitary measures in Peking or some other large city in China where no police is now in existence and where Chinese property interests only are concerned. There is no sufficient reason why a place bordering upon the foreign settlement, where foreigners have already secured landed property, should be chosen as the site of the Chinese Mart.

As to the alleged interference with the Chinese administrative reform and the alleged attempt to extend the influence of the Foreign Settlement, I must deny that such has been the intention of His Majesty's Government. On the contrary, the purpose of the local authorities in the present case is plainly to forestall an effort to extend the present Settlement Limit and to compel the Foreign Community at Shanghai to subject themselves to the restrictions of the Chinese police. I am, therefore, obliged to view their action as an act inconsistent with the friendly relations existing between our Governments and as an infringement of the rights and interests I am charged to maintain. I would repeat my request for the issuance of instructions looking to the discontinuance of the scheme now on foot to make a Chinese Mart in the vicinity of the Shanghai Settlement.

In reply, the Board would state that police and sanitary measures cannot be inaugurated all over the country in a day. Such measures have been in operation for years at Peking and many of the provinces have since adopted similar systems. The insinuation that they have been introduced at no other place, therefore, needs no contradiction.

The place being outside the Settlement Limit, the establishment there of a Chinese mart, and the inauguration therein of a Chinese police and sanitary arrangement, are all matters where the Chinese Government is qualified to take independent action. That the place in question is adjacent to a foreign settlement does not constitute a cause why the Chinese Government should not do so.

In your despatch under reply, your excellency is kind enough to allude to the fact that nothing is farther from the desire of the British Government than the interference with any administrative reform China may see fit to introduce or the further extension of the influence of the settlement.

While this evinces in a convincing manner the goodwill of your government towards us, permit me to point out that an attempt to prevent the establishment of a Chinese mart at a place adjacent to the Settlement in order to make room for its future extension is not consistent with the assurance given.

When China was opened to foreign commerce, she had not taken any steps to organize a police force, or to introduce sanitary systems on modern lines, and it was in view of the inadequate facilities then existing for affording protection to foreigners that we granted them settlements. Within the scores of years that have intervened, much progress has been made along these lines, and the scheme for the Chinese mart now under discussion has been necessitated solely by the increase of trade and is therefore a measure that promises equal benefit to all foreigners as well. If things connected with the newly established police or health departments do not work out as satisfactorily as may be desired, the local authorities will, undoubtedly, be glad to make improvements upon receipt of suggestions, to the end that all alike may receive protection from the Chinese Police. It would seem unfair to view the protection which we seek to afford in the light of "restriction."

In conclusion I beg leave to state that the Board is not in a position to consider the application for the discontinuance of the scheme for a Chinese mart at Shanghai outside the Settlement Limit.

# 華英繙譯捷訣

## A MANUAL OF TRANSLATION

By W. W. Yen, Dr. Litt.

Price, \$0.70

This book, consisting of one hundred lessons, has been carefully compiled from classroom exercises. They have, therefore, been practically tested and their difficult points noted and adequately expounded.

COMMERCIAL PRESS, LIMITED, PUBLISHERS

H 2.

### Translation Exercises

Book I (from Chinese to English)

Revised Edition

Commercial Press, Limited

All rights reserved

辛亥年六月初版  
中華民國三年十二月增訂四版

(增訂華英繙譯金針上編)

(每册定價大洋壹元貳角)  
(外埠酌加運費匯費)

編纂者 閻侯李文彬

增訂者 平湖甘永龍

發行者 商務印書館

印刷所 上海北河南路北首寶山路  
商務印書館

總發行所 上海棋盤街中市  
商務印書館

分售處 北京天津保定奉天吉林龍江  
濟南東昌太原開封洛陽西安  
南京杭州蘭安慶蕪湖南昌

商務印書分館 漢口長沙常德衡州成都重慶  
涇縣福州廣州潮州香港桂林  
梧州雲南貴陽張家口新嘉坡

此書有著作權翻印必究

